Table of Contents

1.	Installing the Software	1 1 4 4 4 4 4
2.	Getting Started Basic Elements of your Software Changing the View Tracking your Steps Using Workspaces Setting Preferences	7 13 19 20 20
3.	Working with Files Creating New Documents Opening Files Importing Files Saving Documents Exporting to Files Sending a Job to EnRoute Closing Documents Linked and Embedded Files Using OLE Objects (Windows Only) Working with Job Info Finding Files Job Estimation Templates	23 23 24 24 24 25 25 26 27 29 29 30 33
4.	Using DesignCentral Displaying DesignCentral Entering Numerical Values DesignCentral Tab	 39 39 39 41
5.	Using DesignEditor Displaying DesignEditor DesignEditor - Layers Tab DesignEditor - Objects Tab.	 47 47 47 50
6.	Selecting Objects	53 54 54 54 55 55 55 56 56

	Inverting Selection	56
7.	Arranging Objects	57 57
	Moving Objects	58
	Rotating, Shearing and Mirroring Objects	59
	Duplicating Objects	61
	Working with Auto Serialization	65
	Grouping Objects	66
	Compounding Objects	67
	Masking Objects	68
	Locking Objects	69
	Changing Object Order	70
	Aligning Objects	71
	Distributing Objects	72
	Snapping Objects	74
	Deleting Objects	75
	Clear Transform	76
8	Working with Color	77
0.	Available Color Models	77
	Applying Colors From the Swatch Table	78
	Applying Colors Using the Color Mixer	78
	Applying Colors Using the Evedropper	79
	Setting the Default Fill / Stroke Color	80
	Setting the Background / Foreground Color	80
	Working with the Swatch Table	80
	Using Color Specs	85
	Creating Color Swatch Tables	88
•	Llaing Fill/Stroke Editor	04
9.	Displaying Fill/Stroke Editor	91
	Displaying Fill/Stroke Editor	91
	Applying No Fills	91
	Applying No Fill to an Object	91
	Applying a Solid Fill to an Object	92
	Applying a Gradient Fill to an Object	92
	Editing Stroke Properties of an Object	97
		01
10.	Working With Shapes	99
	Creating Shapes	99
	Editing Shapes Using DesignCentral1	01
	Editing Shapes Using Control Points1	05
	Converting Objects to Shapes1	09
11.	Working with Text	11
	Creating New Text	12
	Changing Text Attributes Using DesignCentral	14
	Changing Text Attributes Using Control Points	17
	Editing Text	20
	Editing Text	21
	Selecting Text1	21
	U	

	Changing Text Attributes	122
	Changing Default Text Settings	123
	Finding and Replacing	123
	Spell Checking	124
	Changing Case	124
	Changing Kerning	124
	Breaking and Joining Text	126
	Changing Text Orientation	127
	Adjusting Text Block Size	127
	Working With Braille Text	127
	Working With Barcodes	128
	Working With Special Characters	129
	Working With Text Styles	131
		132
	Working with Fonts	133
12.	Working with Paths	37
	Creating Paths	138
	Selecting Points and Segments	141
	Using DesignCentral to Edit Points and Segments	142
	Path Direction	144
	Editing Path	144
40	We while we with Difference	
13.	Working with Bitmaps	55
		155
	Creating Bitmaps	150
	Changing Bitmap Properties	158
	Defining Marguage	160
	Editing Ditmone	160
	Liging Filters	160
	Tracing Ritmans	172
		172
14.	Working with Effects 1	79
	Common Features	179
	Using Combine Effects	179
	Using the Outline Effect	183
	Using the Shadow Effect	185
	Using the Stripes Effect	186
	Using The Distort Effect	190
	Using the Blending Effect	192
	Using the Lens Effect	192
	Using the Underbase Effect	194
		196
	Using Color Trapping	19/
	Using Contour Cut	190
		199
15.	Working with Measurements and Labels	203
	Measuring Distances	203
	Creating Dimensioning Lines	204
	Automatically Dimensioning Objects	205

Dimensioning to Page	.205
Creating Labels	.205
Editing Dimension Lines	.206
Configuring the System for Color Printing	209
Setting the Input Profiles	.209
Setting the Display Profiles	.210
Selecting Rendering Intents	.210
Printing to a Desktop Printer	213
Previewing the Design (Windows Only)	.213
Print Options	.214
Cutting your Design	217 .217 .218 .221 .225
Printing your Design Setting the RIP and Print Dialog RIP and Print Dialog - General Tab RIP and Print Dialog - Panel Tab RIP and Print Dialog - Advanced Tab RIP and Print Dialog - Color Tab Printing with Spot Colors Contour Cutting	229 .230 .233 .237 .239 .240 .240
Setting up Production Manager Understanding Setups Creating Your First Setup Adding New Setups Configuring a Setup Setting up Production Manager on a Network	245 .245 .245 .245 .245 .245 .246
Using Production Manager	249
The Production Manager Window	.249
Changing Preferences	.250
Working with Setups	.251
Selecting a Setup	.253
Activating Setups	.253
Deleting Setups	.253
Editing Setup Properties	.253
Working with Jobs	.258
Using RIP Logs	.260
Setting Job Properties	.261
Nesting Jobs	.282
Tiling and Cropping Jobs	.285
Using Output Size Compensation	.291
	Dimensioning to Page Creating Labels Editing Dimension Lines Configuring the System for Color Printing Setting the Input Profiles. Setting the Display Profiles. Selecting Rendering Intents. Printing to a Desktop Printer Previewing the Design (Windows Only). Print Options. Cutting your Design Setting the Cut/Plot Dialog. Cut / Plot Dialog - General Tab. Cut / Plot Dialog - General Tab. Cut / Plot Dialog - General Tab. Cut / Plot Dialog - Advanced Tab Printing your Design Setting the RIP and Print Dialog. RIP and Print Dialog - General Tab. RIP and Print Dialog - Color Tab. Printing with Spot Colors Contour Cutting Setting up Production Manager Understanding Setups Creating Your First Setup Adding New Setups Configuring a Setup. Setting up Production Manager on a Network Using Production Manager The Production Manager The Production Manager The Production Manager Vorking with Setups Selecting a Setup. Setting Setup Properties. Working with Jobs. Using Output Size Compensation.

Appendix A - ASCII Code	293
Appendix B - Installation	295
Appendix C - Supported File Formats	297
Appendix D - Features List	299
Appendix E - Tracing Features Using Bezier Tracing Using Enhanced Curves Tracing Using Enhanced Corners Tracing Using Centerline Vectorization Using Color Vectorization	301 301 301 301 301 302 303
Appendix F – Keyboard Shortcuts	307
Index	309

Software License Agreement

Carefully read the following terms and conditions sign and return as accepting these terms and conditions.

This is a legal agreement between you, the end user (either an individual or an entity), and Scanvec Amiable, Inc. If you do not agree with the following, you should promptly return the package. Use of this program indicates your acceptance of the terms and conditions stated below.

The enclosed computer program "Software" is licensed, not sold, to you by Scanvec Amiable, Inc., for use on a non-exclusive, non-transferable basis, only under the following terms, and Scanvec Amiable, Inc., reserves any rights not expressly granted to you. You may not disclose to any third party any confidential information concerning the Software or Scanvec Amiable, Inc. or use such confidential information to the detriment of Scanvec Amiable, Inc...

1. License.

This software is protected by the United States Copyright Law and International Treaty Provisions. Therefore, you must treat the Software just as you would any other copyrighted material, such as a book. This license allows you to:

(a) Make one copy of the Software in machine readable form; provided that such a copy of the original may be used solely for backup purposes. As an express condition of this License, you must reproduce on each copy of the Scanvec Amiable, Inc., copyright notice and any other proprietary legends on the original copy supplied by Scanvec Amiable, Inc.

(b) Transfer the Software and all rights under this License to another party together with a copy of this License and all written materials accompanying the Software provided you give Scanvec Amiable, Inc., written notice of the transfer and the other party reads and agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this License.

(c) Use this Software on a single computer only, but may transfer it to another computer as long as it is used on only one computer at a time. "In Use" constitutes being loaded onto either temporary (i.e., RAM) or permanent memory (e.g., hard disk, CD-ROM or other storage device) of a computer.

2. Restrictions.

You may NOT distribute copies of the Software to others or electronically transfer the Software from one computer to another over a network. You may not decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble or otherwise reduce the Software to a human perceivable form. You may not modify, adapt, transfer, rent, lease, loan, resell for profit, distribute, network or create derivative works based upon the software or any part thereof.

3. Termination.

This License is effective until terminated. This License will terminate immediately if you fail to comply with any of its provisions. Upon termination, you must return the Software, and all copies thereof, to Scanvec Amiable, Inc., and you may terminate this License at any time by doing so.

4. Export Law Assurances.

You agree that neither the Software nor any direct product thereof will be transferred or exported, directly or indirectly, into any country prohibited by the

United States Export Administration Act or any international export laws and the restrictions and regulations thereunder, nor will it be used for any purposes prohibited by the Act or laws.

5. Warranty Disclaimer, Limitation of Remedies and Damages.

In no event will Scanvec Amiable, Inc., be liable for any damages, including infringement, lost data, lost profits, cost of cover or other special, incidental, consequential or indirect damages arising from the use of the program however caused and on any theory of liability. This limitation will apply even if Scanvec Amiable, Inc., or an authorized dealer or distributor has been advised of the possibility of such damage. SCANVEC AMIABLE, Inc. MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, AND DISCLAIMS, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTIBILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Scanvec Amiable, Inc., does not warrant any drivers for plotting, scanning or either devices. These drivers are provided for our customers as a service only, and ware developed using information provided to us at the time by the equipment manufacturers.

Scanvec Amiable, Inc., is not responsible for any typographical errors in the software or in the documentation.

6. General.

If you are a U.S. Government end-user, this License of the Software conveys only "RESTRICTED RIGHTS," and its use, disclosure, and duplication are subject to Federal Acquisition Regulations, 52.227-7013(c)(1)(ii). This License will be construed under the laws of the State of Pennsylvania, except for that body of law dealing with conflicts of law, if obtained in the U.S., or the laws of jurisdiction where obtained, if obtained outside the U.S. If any provision of this License is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be contrary to law, that provision of this License will remain in full force and effect.

© Copyright 2002 by Scanvec Amiable, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopy, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. Printed in the United States of America. The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Scanvec Amiable, Inc.

Acrobat® Reader Copyright© 1987-2002 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe and Acrobat are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions. PostScript® software Copyright© 1984-1998 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Flexi, FlexiFAMILY, FlexiSIGN-Pro, FlexiSIGN Plus, FlexiEXPERT, FlexiSIGN, FlexiLETTER, FlexiDESIGNER, FlexiCUT, FlexiENGRAVE, PhotoPRINT Server, PhotoPRINT, PhotoPRINT SE, EnRoute-Pro, EnRoute Plus, EnRoute, EnRoute-Machine Shop, and/or other Scanvec Amiable products referenced herein are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Scanvec Amiable, Inc. Illustrator is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. FreeHand is a registered trademark of Aldus Corporation. CoreIDRAW! is a trademark of Corel Systems Corporation. AppleTalk, ImageWriter, LaserWriter, and Macintosh are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. The names of actual companies and products mentioned herein may be the trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective owners. Adobe® is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated or its

subsidiaries and may be registered in certain jurisdictions. PostScript® is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated or its subsidiaries and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Scanvec Amiable, Inc.

International Plaza Two, Suite 625

Philadelphia, PA 19113-1518

License Agreement for Users of Adobe® Configurable PostScript® Interpreter and Coded Font Programs

1. Licensor grants to Licensee a nonexclusive sublicense, subject to Paragraph 7 below and the other provisions hereof (a) to use the CPSI Application Object ("Software") solely for Licensee's own internal business purposes in a single central processing unit ("CPU"), optional associated display with a resolution of less than one hundred fifty dots per inch, and, optionally, connected to a single or multiple output device (the "Computer System"); (b) to use the digitally-encoded machine-readable outline programs ("Font Programs") provided by Licensor in a special encrypted format ("Coded Font Programs") and identified herewith to reproduce and display designs, styles, weights, and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols ("Typefaces") solely for Licensee's own customary business or personal purposes on the Computer System; and (c) to use the trademarks used by Licensor to identify the Coded Font Programs and Typefaces reproduced therefrom ("Trademarks"). Licensee may assign its rights under this Agreement to a licensee of all of Licensee's right, title and interest to such Software and Coded Font Programs provided the licensee agrees to be bound by all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

2. Licensee acknowledges that the Software, Coded Font Programs, Typefaces and Trademarks are proprietary to Licensor and its suppliers. Licensee agrees to hold the Software and Coded Font Programs in confidence, disclosing the Software and Coded Font Programs only to authorized employees having a need to use the Software and Coded Font Programs as permitted by this Agreement and to take all reasonable precautions to prevent disclosure to other parties.

3. Licensee will not make or have made, or permit to be made, any copies of the Software or Coded Font Programs or portions thereof, except as necessary for its use with a single Computer System hereunder. Licensee agrees that any such copies shall contain the same proprietary notices which appear on or in the Software or the Coded Font Programs.

4. Except as stated above, this Agreement does not grant Licensee any rights to patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trade names, trademarks (whether registered or unregistered), or any other rights, franchises, or licenses in respect of the Software, Coded Font Programs, Typefaces, or Trademarks. Licensee will not adapt or use any trademark or trade name which is likely to be similar to or confusing with that of Licensor or any of its suppliers or take any other action which impairs or reduces the trademark rights of Licensor or its suppliers. The Trademarks can only be used to identify printed output produced by the Coded Font Programs. At the reasonable request of Licensor, Licensee must supply samples of any Typeface identified by a Trademark.

5. Licensee agrees that it will not attempt to alter, disassemble, decrypt or reverse engineer the Software or Coded Font Programs.

6. Licensee acknowledges that the laws and regulations of the United States

restrict the export and re-export of commodities and technical data of United States origin, including the Software or Coded Font Programs. Licensee agrees that it will not export or re-export the Software or Coded Font Programs in any form without the appropriate United States and foreign government licenses. Licensee agrees that its obligations pursuant to this section shall survive and continue after any termination or expiration of rights under this Agreement.

7. The Software licensed hereunder may be used to generate screen displays on a single Computer System having a screen resolution of less than 150 dots per inch and to generate output on the associated output device. Licensee agrees not to make use of the Software, directly or indirectly, (i) to generate bitmap images on a screen display with a resolution of 150 dots per inch or greater, (ii) to generate Typefaces for use other than with the Computer System, or (iii) to generate printed output on other than an output device that Licensor has designated to be approved for use with the Software on the Computer System. Any failure of Licensee to comply with this provision is a material breach of this End User Agreement.

8. NEITHER LICENSOR NOR ANY OF ITS REPRESENTATIVES MAKES OR PASSES ON TO LICENSEE OR OTHER THIRD PARTY ANY WARRANTY OR REPRESENTATION ON BEHALF OF LICENSOR'S THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS.

9. Licensee is hereby notified that Adobe Systems Incorporated, a California corporation located at 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704 ("Adobe") is a third-party beneficiary to this Agreement to the extent that this Agreement contains provisions which relate to Licensee's use of the Software, the Coded Font Programs, the Typefaces and the Trademarks licensed hereby. Such provisions are made expressly for the benefit of Adobe and are enforceable by Adobe in addition to Licensor.

10. The Adobe Postscript Interpreter includes an implementation of LZW licensed under U.S. Patent 4,558,302. The Adobe® PostScript© Interpreter, also referred to as CPSI, is provided on an as is basis. Scanvec Amiable, Inc. is not responsible for any damages arising from the use of the program however caused and on any theory of liability.

ProDeSIGN

1. Installing the Software

Before you begin installing the software, read the hardware requirements below. For optimal performance we suggest that your system meet the recommended requirements. As with all computer software, systems with faster processors, more RAM, and greater amounts of storage space allow you to work with larger files and keep your processing time to a minimum.

Recommended System Requirements

	Windows	Macintosh	
Processor	Pentium II 350 MHz G3 300 MHz		
RAM	256 Mb	ytes	
Install Space	200 Mb	ytes	
Working Disk Space	4 Gbytes		
Operating SystemWindows 98 / ME / Windows NT4.0 / 2000 / XPMacOS 9.2		MacOS 9.x / OSX 10.1	
Video	800x600 resolution monitor with 16 bit color		
	4x CD-ROM or DVD Drive		
Other	Free USB or LPT Port for hardware key	Free USB Port for hardware key	
	Available Port for	Output Device	

Windows NT 4.0 requires Internet Explorer 5.x or greater & Service Pack 4 or higher.

Installation Procedures

The software will not run without a hardware protection key, also known as a dongle. The hardware key protects the software from being unlawfully copied and must be connected to your computer whenever you use the software.

There are three types of hardware keys: Parallel, ADB and USB keys.







Parallel key (Windows only)

ADB key (Macintosh only)

Installing a Hardware Key

- 1. Turn off your computer.
- 2. Plug the hardware key into the port (USB, LPT or ADB).
- 3. Turn on your computer.
- When using parallel port keys, we recommend that you plug your output device and key into separate parallel ports.

Once the USB hardware key driver has been installed, the driver will cause an LED built into the key to light. The USB driver is installed automatically as part of the software installation.

Installing the Software (Windows)

Follow these steps to install the software:

- If you're installing on a PC running Windows NT/2000/XP, you must have Administrator privileges. See your Windows user guide for details.
- 1. Insert the Installation CD.
- 2. Select a language and then click Next.
- 3. Enter your user number and password and then click **Next**. The User number and password can be found on the product hardware key.
- 4. Select the product and language to be installed and then click Next.
- 5. Click **Next** to continue.
- 6. Read the Software License Agreement and click **Yes** to accept.
- 7. Click **Next** to continue.
- 8. Click Yes to view the readme file.
- The readme file contains last-minute issues and information that are not included in this documentation.
- 9. You may change the default destination folder here. Click Next.
- 10. Select the type of installation to install. **Typical** is recommended. Click **Next**.
- 11. Select the folder where the software will be included. If you accept the default folder, a new folder will be created for the product. Click **Next**.
- 12. Click Yes to clear the preferences or No to retain old preferences.
- 13. Select the printers you want to install color profiles for then click **Next**.
- 14. Select Yes and click OK to restart your computer.

Uninstalling the Software (Windows)

- 1. Exit your software by selecting Exit from File menu.
- 2. In the Windows Control Panel, double-click the Add/Remove Programs icon.
- 3. Select your software from the list and click the **Change/Remove** button.
- 4. Click **OK** when finished.
- 5. Go into the drive containing the directory where the software was installed. Delete this folder.

Installing the Software (Macintosh)

Follow these steps to install the software:

- 1. Insert the Installation CD.
- 2. Double click the "CD Installer" icon.
- 3. Select a language and then click OK.
- 4. Enter your user number and password and then click **OK**. The User number and password can be found on the product hardware key.
- 5. Select the product and language to be installed and then click **OK**.
- 6. Read the Software License Agreement and click Accept.
- 7. Select the type of installation to install. **Easy Install** is recommended. Click **Install**.
- 8. Click **Yes** to clear the preferences or **No** to retain old preferences.
- 9. Click OK.
- 10. Click OK.
- 11. Click Quit.
- 12. Insert the ICC Profile CD.
- 13. Double click the "ICC Profile Installer" icon.
- 14. Select the folder where the profiles will be installed.
- 15. Select the printer for those profiles will be installed and then click **OK**.
- 16. Restart your computer.

Uninstalling the Software (Macintosh)

- 1. Exit your software by selecting Quit from File menu.
- 2. Drag the alias for your software from the desktop to the Trash.
- 3. Drag the folder where your software was installed to the Trash.

Using a Hardware Key Over a Local Area Network

It is possible to run the software on a different computer than the one the hardware key is installed on. However, you cannot run more than one concurrent instance of the software using the same hardware key.

To run the software using a hardware key installed on a different computer:

- 1. On the computer with the hardware key, make sure the software is not running.
- 2. Run Production Manager on the computer with the hardware key.
- On the computer you want to run the software on, make sure the software is installed using the user number assigned to the hardware key.

When you run the software on the second computer, it will recognize the hardware key from the first computer and run.

Macintosh Shortcut Keys

If you are using this software in a Macintosh, see the table below to convert some commands and definitions used in this manual.

Windows System		Macintosh System
Right-click the mouse	=	Click the mouse pressing CONTROL key
CTRL key	=	OPTION key
ENTER key	=	RETURN key

Clear Preferences

Clear Preferences is a utility that removes all output device setups and returns the software to its default settings. It is particularly helpful when troubleshooting any problems you may encounter with your software.

To clear the preferences stored in your system:

- 1. Exit the software
- 2. Run the Clear Preferences utility.
- 3. Select **Yes** when you are asked if you would like to clear your preferences.

Password Installer

The Password installer is a utility that helps you manage the different passwords that come with the software. After you have installed the basic program with your main password, you should then launch the Password Installer to add any additional passwords you may have.

Application Password - This is your main application password for software.

Option passwords- If you have purchased additional options, you may enter the option passwords to this field to upgrade your software.

Note: Make sure that the software is not running when you add a new password.

To add additional passwords:

- 1. Launch the Password Installer.
- 2. Your main application password will appear in the top section.
- 3. Add your additional passwords to the optional password section by clicking the Add button, and entering the password into the dialog.
- 4. When you have finished, your password should appear in list in the optional password field.

2. Getting Started

The illustration below shows some of the basic elements of your software:



Basic Elements of your Software

Toolbars

Toolbars are a set of commands grouped according to their function.



Standard toolbar

To show or hide a toolbar:

- 1. From the View menu, select Toolbars.
- 2. Check or uncheck the toolbars that you want to show or hide.

Or, in Windows:

- 3. Right click the area around the design area where the toolbars are docked.
- 4. In the menu, select or unselect the toolbar that you want to show or hide.

You can also hide a toolbar by clicking the **Close** button on the upper right side of the toolbar.

In Windows, toolbars are docked or floating. Docked toolbars are placed

at fixed positions around the design area. Floating toolbars can be placed anywhere in the design area. You can undock a toolbar, making it a floating toolbar and then place it at any location in the design area. Macintosh toolbars are always floating.

To undock a toolbar:

Drag the toolbar from its docked position. (Do not drag buttons).

Or

- Double click the toolbar. (Do not double click buttons).
- Ð Dragging or double clicking the buttons will not undock or dock the toolbar.





Docked Toolbars

Undocked View Toolbar

The shape of a floating toolbar can be adjusted by dragging its borders.



× 🗅 🚔 🔲 🚑 📅 🎹 X 🖻 🛱 n B a 🎅 💖 🔚 💼 🖬 👒 🛕 🍳 🔣

The shape of a floating toolbar can be adjusted by dragging its borders.

When a button has a small triangle on upper right corner, is an indication that this button is a part of a tear-off palette.



To use the tools in a tear-off palette:

- Click once on the button and drag it slightly to display the full 1. palette.
- 2. Once it is displayed, you can either select the desired tool and release the mouse button, displaying the new tool, or you can drag the entire palette away from the original palette and release the mouse to drop it on the drawing area.





Menus

Menus are commands grouped by the types of operations they perform.



When right clicking elements in your software, a context menu is displayed. The context menu will differ according to the element that you are right clicking on.





Exit Tool	
Zoom)
📩 Undo Create Oval	
cw ^{Redo}	
Styles	,
Paste	
Import	

Color Specs		
New Table		
Open Table		
Merge Table		
Save Table		
Save Table As		
Merge from Document		
Merge Similar Colors		
Define Pattern		
Delete		
Sort		
Show		
View	•	
	+	
Close		
		K

Right clicking a shape

Right clicking a blank area



Tool Tips

All fields and control points that can be dragged will show tool tips to help. Some commands will also show a brief description at the bottom of your screen.

To show a tool tip, hover the cursor over the field, command or control point for a few seconds.



Design Area

The design area is the white area inside the software's screen. It has a border that serves as a guide and represents the size of your substrate. The size of the design area does not limit the size of your design or where the design is placed on your media during output.

Margins can be placed inside the design area. Those margins are used to distribute and align objects inside the design area. You can change the size and the color of the drawing area and show or hide the borders. See "DesignCentral - Document Tab" on page 41 for more information on how to set up your document properties.

Swatch Table

Swatch Tables includes a group of standard colors, gradients and patterns that can be applied to objects in your design. See "Swatch Table" on page 80 for more information on swatch tables.

To show the Swatch Table, from the View menu, select Swatch Table.

Rulers and Grid

Rulers appear along the top and left side of the main screen to help you measure and align objects. As you move the cursor in the design area,

a tick mark on each ruler follows the movement of the cursor. Also, the coordinates of the cursor position are displayed at bottom left corner of the screen.

To show or hide the rulers, from the **View** menu, point to **Show** and click **Show Rulers**.

Grids, like rulers, can help you align objects in the design area. Grids are a series of horizontal and vertical dotted lines within the design area. They will not show as part of the output.

To show or hide the grids, from the **View** menu, point to **Show** and click **Show Grid**.

The rulers, grids and all other numeric values that represent a length follow a unit system defined in your software. To change the unit system, right click a ruler and select the new unit. On Macintosh, click and hold on the mouse button on the rulers.

By default, the origin of the rulers is located in the lower left corner of the design area. To change the origin, you can click and drag the origin icon in the upper left corner of your screen.



Click and drag the Origin icon

The new Origin

You can also adjust the origin's position by using the Ruler and Grid Settings dialog box. To display this dialog box:

Double click the **Origin** icon in the upper left hand corner of design area

Or

• From the View menu, select Ruler and Grid.

The Ruler & Grid dialog box consists of two Tabs, **Rulers** and **Grid**. To select a Tab, click the tabs on the top of the dialog box.

You can adjust the following on the **Ruler** Tab:

Origin Enter the X, Y coordinates of the new origin.

- **Orientation** Click one of these buttons to change the orientation of the coordinates in the X, Y rulers.
- Units Select the unit system that will be used for length values from this list.

You can adjust the following on the Grid tab:

Spacing Horizontal and vertical space between adjacent dots.

Snap to Check this option to snap the objects to the grid while moving or grid resizing an object.

Guide

Guides allow you to visually align design elements on your document.

To show or hide the guides, from the View menu, point to Show and then click Show Guides.

You can create a guide line by:

Clicking and dragging one point on the ruler. Horizontal or vertical guide lines are created, depending on which ruler you dragged the point from.





Click and drag a point in the ruler

A new vertical guide is created

- Select objects and from the Arrange menu, point to Guides and click Make Guide. Select Release Guide in the same menu to convert guides back to original objects.
- To create a diagonal guide, create a horizontal or vertical guide, unlock the guides and then rotate the horizontal or vertical guides in DesignCentral -Rotate Tab





Objects converted to guides

In DesignEditor, drag objects from generic layer to Guide Layer. For more information about the Guide Layer see "DesignEditor -Lavers Tab" on page 47.

To lock the guides:

- From the Arrange menu, point to Guides and click Lock Guides.
- Ð Guides cannot be selected by dragging a bounding box around them. You have to click the guide.

To select all guide lines:

- 3. From the Edit menu, point to Select and then click Select by Attributes command.
- 4. Select Guide Line in Object Tab.
- 5. Click OK.

Status Bar

The Status bar is the area located on the bottom of your screen and displays the following information:

The present X, Y coordinates of the cursor or additional information about the selected command.

The default fill and stroke colors or the foreground and background colors (when in bitmap editing mode).

To show or hide the Status Bar:

• From the View menu, select Status Bar.

Changing the View

You have several commands to change how the design area is viewed.

Using a Wheel Mouse

If your computer is equipped with a wheel mouse, you can use the mouse wheel to control the view:

- Moving the mouse wheel up and down pans the view up and down.
- Holding the SHIFT key and moving the wheel up and down pans the view left and right.
- Holding the **CTRL** key and moving the wheel up and down zooms the view in and out.

Using Scroll bars

Scroll bars are horizontal and vertical bars located in the bottom and left side of your design area. Use them to scroll the design area.



Zooming and Panning

The Zoom tools changes the magnification of items within the document to allow you to see more or less detail. This does not change the output size.

<u> A</u> ____ P2 95 0

Magnifies the center of the view to twice the size of current view.

Magnifies the center of the view to half the size of current view.

Adjust the view size to fit the design area size.

Switches the view to previous magnification.

Adjusts the view size to fit the selected objects. When there are no objects selected, this button is disabled.



Adjusts the view size to fit all existing objects. When there are no objects in the design, this button is disabled.



Select this tool and click and drag inside the design area to pan the view position.



Select this tool and

- Click to zoom in twice the size of the current view, the center will be the clicked position.
- SHIFT and click to zoom out to half of the current view, the center will be the clicked position.
- Click and drag to magnify one particular portion of design area.

Every time you click the Zoom or Pan tool, the view is magnified or panned. By default the cursor will return to the previous tool after using these tools. You must reselect the tool to use the Zoom or Pan tool again. If you want to use the Zoom or Pan tool without selecting it before each use one of the following:

Double click the **Zoom** tool and uncheck the **Resume previous** tool after zooming once option.

Or

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences command.
- 2 Click Tools Tab.
- 3. Select Zoom in the list.
- 4. Uncheck Resume previous tool after zooming once option.
- 5. Click OK.

Using Navigator View

Navigator View allows you to view your entire document and specify which portion to display.

To show the Navigator View, from the View menu, select Navigator View.







Design Area

To change the view:

Navigator View

- Click and drag a point inside the View Area to pan the portion displayed in the design area.
- Click and drag a control point around the View Area to resize it, causing a zoom in or zoom out in the design area.

Showing an Object's Fill

When the Show Fill option is enabled, every vector object is displayed with its fill. When disabled, only the outline will be visible.

To show or hide the fill, from the View menu, select Show Fills.

When Show Fills is disabled, the outlines can be displayed using the following modes:

Show layer color	All outlines are disp "Changing the Laye change the layer's	played using the layer er Color" on page 49 color	er color. See about how to
Show fill color	The outlines are dis color	splayed using the ol	oject's original fill
Show path direction	The outlines are dis for clockwise paths paths and Gray for still be displayed us	splayed using three , Magenta for count open paths. Select sing the layer color.	colors. Green ter clockwise ed objects will
CHICAGO			
Show Fills	Show Fills	Show Fills	Show Fills
Enabled	Disabled	Disabled (Show	Disabled (Show

layer color)

To change the way the outlines are displayed:

Double click the Fill Mode tool and select the Wireframe option.

Or

1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences command.

(Show fill color)

path direction)



- 2. Click **Tools** Tab.
- 3. Select Show Fills in the list.
- 4. Select the Wireframe option.
- 5. Click OK.

Showing Path Directions

The direction in which the path will be cut or plotted is determined by the path direction. See "Path Direction" on page 144 about how to change the path direction.

You can visualize the path direction using **Show path direction** mode as described in previous item, or show direction arrows in each path.

To show or hide the direction arrows:

- 1. From the View menu, select Show Path Direction.
- 2. Select the object.



Paths with direction arrows

Previewing Bitmaps

You can display or hide bitmap images.

To show or hide the bitmap, from the View menu, select Preview Bitmaps.



Preview Bitmaps Enabled



Preview Bitmaps Disabled



Showing Preview

When Show Preview is on, a copy of the object as it is being edited or moved is displayed. When this option is off, a rectangle representing the bounding of the object is displayed. Performing memory-intensive operations in complex objects may slow the system performance when Show Preview is on.

To show or hide the preview, from the View menu, select Show Preview.



Moving an object with Show Preview on

Redrawing the Design Area

Occasionally, when you edit your design, those changes are not reflected accurately. To make sure that the design area is fully updated, select **Redraw** command from the **View** menu. This forces a redrawing of the design area.

Previewing Objects in CMYK

If you are going to print your document, you can preview how your output will look by using the CMYK soft preview. This feature will alter the colors in your document to show how they will look when printed. The colors outside the CMYK gamut will be adjusted to the nearest possible CMYK color value. To preview the colors in CMYK mode:

- From the View menu, select Soft Proof.
- If objects in your document and the swatch table appear "washed out", it may be because the Soft Proof feature is on.



Soft Proof is Off

Soft Proof is On

To accurately preview the colors, you have to set up the correct Color Profiles and Rendering Intents that will be used in printing. See "Configuring the System for Color Printing" on page 209 for more details.

Filtering Objects by Color

Objects may be filtered by their color in the design area. For example, you can show all objects using RGB color space, or all green objects.

To filter objects using the Color Filter:

- 1. From the View menu, select View Filter.
- 2. Select the colors that will be visible.
 - Click the color space checkbox to select all colors from this color space.
 - Click the specific color within one color space to select or unselect this color.
 - Click Show All to select all colors from all color spaces.
 - Click Show None to unselect all colors from all color spaces.

3. Click OK.

Filtering settings will not be saved with your document. The next time you open this file, all objects will be visible.

You can also filter objects by color using the context menu in the Color Swatch table:

- 1. Place the cursor over the color in the Swatch Table.
- 2. Right-click the Swatch Table. A menu is displayed.
- 3. From the **View** menu select the filtering option. The following options are available:

Hide This Color	Objects using this color will not be visible.	
Show This Color	Objects using this color will be visible.	
Show All Except This Color	Only the objects using this color will not be visible.	
Hide All Except This Color	Only the objects using this color will be visible.	
Show all colors	All objects will be visible.	

•• • 🛛

After selecting Hide This Color



Cursor over the Swatch Table

Getting Started

Tracking your Steps

Your software contains several tracking tools to retrace your steps, making it easier to recover from operation mistakes.

Undoing and Redoing the Last Step

To undo the last operation, from the **Edit** menu, select **Undo** ______ The name of the last operation is displayed after the **Undo** command.

To redo a step that you have just undone, from the **Edit** menu, select **Redo** _____.

Undoing and Redoing Multiple Steps

Instead of undoing just the last operation, you can undo a sequence of multiple steps.

1. From the Edit menu, select Undo Multiple.

A list with all recent steps is displayed. The steps are shown in order, with the most recent step appearing on the top of the list.

Click to select the steps that you want to undo, starting from the top.

The design area dynamically shows a preview of the undoing process.

3. Click **OK** to confirm and apply the undo.

The selected steps are undone and placed in a redo list.



After undoing multiple steps, if you decide that you didn't want to undo those actions:

1. From the Edit menu, select Redo Multiple.

A list with undo steps is displayed.

2. Click and drag to select the steps that you want to cancel the undo, starting from the top.

The design area dynamically shows a preview.

3. Click OK.

The number of undo and redo operations that is allowed can be adjusted. For example, if you set the number of steps to 50, after performing the 50^{th} step, the 1^{st} step will be discarded and the 51^{st} step will be placed at the top of the list.

To adjust the number of steps stored in undo list :

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. In General Tab, enter the number of steps in Maximum undo/redo
- 3. Click OK.

Repeating the Last Step

To repeat the last step, select **Repeat** from the **Edit** menu. The name of the last operation will be displayed after the Repeat command.

Only the following commands can be repeated:

- Moving objects
 Duplicating objects
- Scaling objects
 Applying effects

Using Workspaces

Workspace stores how and where the menus, buttons, commands and keyboard shortcuts are defined. By changing the Workspace feature, you can rearrange the software's interface to look more like the design software that you are more comfortable with.

To change the workspace, from the **File** menu, point to **Workspace** and select the workspace.

Setting Preferences

Many aspects of your software may be saved so that they are set up the way you like every time you open a new file. These settings are known as **program preferences**.

There are other settings that are saved on a document basis. Which means that each time you open or save a document, the settings will be applied only for that particular document. These settings are known as **document preferences**.

To change the program preferences, from the **Edit** menu, select **Preferences**.

Preferences - General Tab

In this dialog box, you can set the general attributes of your software:

Maximum Undo/Redo	Determines the number of operations stored in the undo / redo list. Smaller values in this field use less memory.
Selection Tolerance	Determines how close the cursor must be from the object to select it. Setting a larger value makes it easier to select points.
Constrain Angle	Sets the constrain angle when you rotate an object with the SHIFT key pressed. The rotation will be performed in increments defined by this field.
Save Documents Every	Open documents will be periodically saved. You can specify the time period between saves.
Trash Capacity	Number of objects that can be saved in the trash layer.
Precision	Number of decimals in numeric fields.
Restore Defaults	Click this button to restore the default settings for above fields.

Preferences - File Path Tab

In this dialog box, you can set the default folders used in your software:

Document	The default folder used to store your documents.
Temporary Files	The default folder used to create temporary files. If you have multiple hard disks, select a folder in the hard disk with more free space available.
Adobe Plug- ins	If you have the Adobe Photoshop installed, specify here the folder where the plug-ins are stored.
Browse	Click this button to change the folder.
Restore Defaults	Click this button to restore the default settings for above fields.

Preferences - Font Tab

In this dialog box, you can set the default settings for external FSfonts:

Path	The folder where the FSfonts are stored.
Add	If the FSfont is protected by a password, click this button to enter the password.
Delete	Click this button to delete the selected password.
Browse	Click this button to change the folder.
Restore Defaults	Click this button to restore the default settings for above fields.

Preferences - Tools Tab

In this dialog box, you can set the default settings for some of the tools available in the software.

o, P	Apply Template	These preferences allow you to specify the default template used when you apply a template. See "Using Templates" on page 34.		
5	Combine Options	These preferences allow you to specify the options used in Combine effect. See "Combine Effect Options" on page 182.		
t	Cut/Plot or	This tool allows you to specify that the software must communicate with Production Manager using TCP/IP.		
)	RIP and Print	Clear this box if the operating system is not Windows NT, 2000 or XP, or if the computer is running firewall software that might interfere with TCP/IP communications.		
՝☆	Meter	These preferences allow you to specify the colorimeter used in your software to measure color values and the port where the measurement device is connected. For more information about how to use the measurement device, see "Adding New Colors Using Color Specs" on page 82 and "Modifying Existing Color Libraries (Windows Only)" on page 83.		
C2	Paste	These preferences allow you to specify if the copied objects will be automatically created when pasted, and the offset distance from the original object. See "Duplicating Objects Using Copy and Paste" on page 62 for more information.		
k	Select Tool	These preferences allow you to specify how the objects will be selected. See "Selecting Objects Using Select Tool" on page 53 for more information.		
Ľ	Show Fills	These preferences allow you to specify how the paths are displayed when the Show Fill option is off. See "Showing Object's Fill" on page 15 for more details.		
Т	Text Tool	Sets several aspects of the text tool. See "Text Preferences" on page 132 for more information.		
\$	Tip of the Day	Displays a tip when you start your software.		
€	Zoom	Selects if the zoom and pan tool will be used only once. See "Zooming and Panning" on page 13 for more information.		

3. Working with Files

Your document can contain any combination of vector, bitmap, OLE or PostScript objects.

- Vectors Vectors are a collection of straight or curved segments. These objects can be scaled to any size without losing detail or clarity. Shapes like rectangles, circles and text are vector objects.
- Also called raster images, bitmaps are formed by a grid of small Bitmaps dots, known as pixels to represent images. Each pixel is assigned a specific location and color value. A low resolution bitmap image can appear jagged when printed.
- PostScript Images described using a page-description language known as PostScript. These objects can contain a combination of vector and bitmap images. When imported into your document, PostScript objects can be parsed or previewed.
- OLE OLE is the abbreviation of Object Linking and Embedding and it is available only for Windows. OLE is a compound document standard developed by Microsoft and it enables you to create objects with one application and then link or embed them in your document.



Vector objects

Bitmap object



object

	Value 1		Value 2		
	\$	*	\$		
06-Jan-99	12,098	0,09	12,650	-0,	
07-Jan-99	12,101	0,04	12,700	0,	
08-Jan-99	12,104	0,02	12,750	0,	
11-Jan-99	12,109	0,04	12,750	0,	
12-Jan-99	12,114	0,04	12,750	0,	
13-Jan-99	13,193	8,91	14,000	9;	
OLE object					

Parsed PostScript

Creating New Documents

To create a new document:

From the File menu, select New.

Opening Files

To open an existing file:

- 1. From the File menu, select Open.
- 2 Select the file format, folder and the file that will be opened. See "Appendix C - Supported File Formats" at page 297 for all supported file formats.
- 3. Click Open.

If the file contains fonts that are not installed in your system, a dialog box will appear, allowing you to select a replacement font.



Double clicking the file icon in Windows Explorer or dragging the file icon to your software icon on desktop, will start the application and open the file.



Double click to open the file

Importing Files

To import an existing file into current document:

- 1. From the File menu, select Import.
- Select the file format, folder and the file that will be imported. See "Appendix C - Supported File Formats" at page 297 for all supported file formats.
- 3. Click **Import**. A bounding box will be displayed.

TAB key changes the position of the cursor on the bounding box. **ESC** key stops the import operation.

4. Click the design area and place the imported object.

If the file contains fonts that are not installed in your system, a dialog box will appear, allowing you to select a replacement font.

If the **Auto-place on paste and import** option in **Paste preferences** is enabled, the file will be imported immediately after clicking the **Import** button in step (3).

Saving Documents

To save the current document:

- 1. From the File menu, select Save or Save as.
- 2. If you have selected the **Save as** command or your are saving the document for the first time, a dialog box is displayed. Enter the name and the location that will be used to save the document.
- 3. Click Save.

Exporting to Files

To export the current document or part of it into a file:

- 1. If you are exporting only part of your document, select the objects that will be exported.
- 2. From the File menu, select Export.

3. Select the file format, folder and the file name. See "Appendix C - Supported File Formats" at page 297 for all supported file formats.

The following options are available:

Selection only	Check this option to export only the selected objects.
Suppress options	Some file formats will show an option dialog box before exporting to a file. Check this option to bypass the options dialog box.

4. Click Export.

Sending a Job to EnRoute

If you have the EnRoute program installed on your computer, the software allows you to transfer the current design directly to EnRoute.

To transfer the current design to EnRoute, from the **File** menu, select **Send to EnRoute**.

Closing Documents

To close the current document:

- 1. From the File menu, select Close.
- 2. If your document have been changed since the time it was last saved, a dialog box is displayed asking if you want to save the current document.
 - Click Yes to save the document before closing it.
 - Click **No** to close the document without saving.
 - Click Cancel to exit the closing procedure.



Linked and Embedded Files

When importing bitmap, EPS or PostScript files, you can link or embed the file into your document. A link is a connection between the document and the original file.

- **Embedded** An embedded object is contained in your document. Once a **object** file is embedded, there is no longer a connection between it and the file from which it came. Changes to the original file have no effect on the embedded object.
- Linked When an object is linked, only a reference to the image file is stored in the document. The image information remains in the original image file. If the image file is changed, those changes will also appear in your document. Since linking to a picture preserves the original attributes of the image file, it is recommended for color printing.
- PostScript files often contain an optional preview graphic. When you link or embed a PostScript file, the preview graphic will be displayed in your document. If the PostScript file does not contain a preview, a "X" will be displayed instead.



Embedded PostScript files will automatically be converted into the equivalent drawing objects from the software, at which point they can be displayed and edited like any other object.

Embedding Linked PostScript Files

To read in and parse a linked PostScript file, so that it becomes an embedded file:

- 1. Select the preview of the linked PostScript file.
- 2. Select the **PostScript** tab in DesignCentral.
- 3. Click Parse.


Using OLE Objects (Windows Only)

The OLE (Object Linking and Embedding) feature of Windows allows you to import objects that were created using other software installed on your computer such as spreadsheet and word processors.

Inserting OLE Objects

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Insert New Object.
- 2. Select the type of object you want to create. Only programs that are installed on your computer that support OLE appear in the list.
- 3. Select **Create New** option to create a new OLE object using the selected application.
- Check **Display As Icon** to show the OLE object simply as an icon. Click **Change Icon** button to change the icon.
- 4. The selected programs will start, creating a window inside your software.
- 5. Resize and edit the contents of the window, using the selected program.
- 6. To finish using the selected program, press **ESC** key or click anywhere outside the program window.



Design area with an Excel spreadsheet.

0 📽 🖬	@ ? T & @ @	R & B V 🖽	🖻 🗄 🌍 🖪 🍳	
	-45 -44			0
÷ .	Q1 - 2000	699	31,056	28,050
· · · ·	Q2 - 2000	59,712	28,161	31,755
K T	Q3 - 2000	43,629	44,380	95,359
	Q4 - 2000	133,616	27,872	45,689
Z 1	01 - 2001	77,700	66,000	2,760
	Q2 - 2001	33,900	13,311	8,057
	Q3 - 2001	36,400	2,700	13,602
/ 1	04 - 2001	37 800	4 900	14 174

After the OLE object has been inserted

Inserting Existing Files as OLE Objects

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Insert New Object.
- 2. Select **Create From File** to merge an existing file into your document.
- 3. Click **Browse** and find the file to be inserted.
- Check **Display As Icon** to show the OLE object simply as an icon. Click **Change Icon** button to change the icon.
- Check **Link** option to link the selected file. The object in the file will be stored apart from the document, and all the changes made in the source file will be reflected in your document. If the **Link** option is unchecked, the object will be embedded and stored with the document.
- 4. Click OK.



The document with a linked OLE object.

Editing OLE Objects

To edit an OLE object:

- 1. Select the OLE object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to [...] Object and then click Edit or Open.

When you select **Edit**, the program associated with the OLE object will start in a window inside your document and will be finished after the edition. If you choose **Open**, a full instance of the program will start and you may leave this application running even after editing the OLE object.

Double clicking the OLE object has the same effect as Edit command

Converting OLE Objects

You can convert OLE objects to another format:

- 1. Select the OLE object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to [...] Object and then click Convert.
- 3. Select the new format from the list.
- 4. Click OK.

You can also convert OLE objects to basic segments and bitmaps:

- 1. Select the OLE object.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Convert Linked to Native.

Changing Linking Properties of OLE Objects

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Link.
- 2. Change the following linking options:

Automatic / Manual	By default, linked objects are set for Automatic updating. This means that your software automatically updates the linked information every time you open the document or any time the linked file changes when the document is open. Select Manual to update the object in your document only when you choose to manually update it.
Update Now	When in Manual mode, click this button to updates the OLE object in your document to reflect the situation of

the original file.

Open Source	Click this button to open the linked file using the associated program.
Change Source	Click this button to change the linked file, replacing the current file with another one.
Break link	Click this button to permanently break the connection between a linked object and its source file.

Working with Job Info

Your program allows you to store information about the job with each file you create. You can add or change information about a job at any point in the design and production process. This information becomes part of the file and is saved when the file is saved.

			× .					×
	Job Oustoner Stati	istos		Job Ousto	mer Statistics	Job Oustoner Statis	tes	
A	Jab # [1234	Price/90	F000 🗐	Hane	John Doe	Created 1	292年8月25日 163024	
	Order taken to:	ohe Cod		Company:	AGME Inc.	Modified 1	20248月25日 124614 2026年8月25日	
	PO.# JA	12014		Street	[1234 ABC 5).	Output		
	Delivery date 12	210/9		Oity	Leo Anecleo	Last saved by:	Raberto Endo	
	Terns 50) days		State/Zip	EA	Revision number Total edition time:	2 R? Mewten	
TKIT & PROVISONALLY	Shopine 12	2/13/99		Country.	LEA	Statistics Statistic	None Volte	
CNOLL CEAD	CHECK PROF.		2	Phone B	555-1234	Character Character	454	_
	Connecto D	vwing : 2cm	2	Fex #	E86-9842	Colory Size	5 04100cm x 59.400cm	
	1	eed More Mageria	2	Frail	December com	Cut lengt	914Sion	
	Kaywords D	Iboard Magenta Black Diamond S	Inov Gear				Resot	
Consistences in Systems		06	Carcel		OK Cancel		06	Concel
	Joh To	^a h		Cue	tomer Tab	 Statist	ice Tab	

Job Tab

Customer Tab

Statistics I ab

To view or edit the Job Info:

- 1. From the Edit menu click Job Info.
- 2. There are three tabs that you can view or edit the job info:

Job Tab	In this dialog box you can edit the information about this
	particular document.

- Customer Tab In this dialog box you can edit the information about the customer.
- Statistics Tab This dialog box contains stored information about the job, including the amount of time spent editing it, the number of times it was revised (the number of times it was saved), as well as other information. Clicking Reset button will restore the number of revisions and the total editing time on a file.
- 3. Click OK.

Finding Files

The Find File feature allows you to search for specific files. You can search the file based on file name or any of the parameters of Job Information

To search for one file:

1. From the File menu, select Find File.

- 2. Click **Browse** and select the folder where the search will be performed. If you want to search all sub folders check the **Include subfolders** option.
- 3. Enter the search condition:
 - If you want to search a file by its name, enter the file name in **Named** field.
 - If you want to search a file using any of the job information, select the job info field from the list provided and enter the search text in the contains field. For example, to search for all jobs where the order was taken by John Doe, you would select Order Taken by and type John Doe into the contains field.
- 4. Click **Search** button.
- 5. A list with all files matching the search condition will be displayed.
- 6. Select the file in list and:
 - Click Job Info button to show the job information.
 - Click **Open** button or double click the file in the list to open the file.
 - Click **Cancel** button to end the search.

Job Estimation

Job Estimation is a tool for producing price estimates of your job. The Job Estimation stores accounting information for each job, calculates price automatically, and gives a price estimate. The information can always be changed or customized to reflect your costs and needs.

This feature is intended to be a guideline and therefore all results should be thoroughly reviewed before basing any business or financial agreements upon them.

The estimation is calculated based on some elements of your design like the number of characters or the material area. These values are automatically gathered from your document. Other values like preparation time must be manually entered when doing the job estimation.

Those cost elements used in job estimation are grouped in **Category**, **Item** and **Type**:



Category	Item		Туре
Color Printing	Color	[CMYKLcLm printing
		[CMYKOrGr printing
			Spot Color
	Color Correction	[ICC Customization
	File Preparation	[PostScript File Creation

Material Area	Economy]	All Types
	Fluorescent]	All Types
	Translucent	<u> </u>	All Types

Using Job Estimation

- 1. From the Edit menu click Job Estimation.
- 2. Select the Form type.
- Select the Item in the list and edit the Unit Cost, Quantity and One Time fields for selected item. Repeat this process for all items that need any correction.
- 4. Edit the Quantity and Tax rate fields.
- After the estimation is completed, you can either print an invoice by clicking **Print** button or save the estimation values as a text file clicking **Export** button.
- The **Total** value will be automatically inserted in Job Info Job Tab.

orm: Normal	▼ Sa	ve	Delete	E	troops	Print
escription:	UI []	nit cost:	Quantiky: 0.000 😤	1	Amount:	
ltem	Type	Each(\$)	Quantity	OT	Amount(\$)	Unit
Intermediate Vinyl	All Types	0.40	1.54		0.62	square foot
Transfer Tape	All Types	0.09	2.31		0.21	square foot
Plastic	Sintra 3 mm	1.37	6.00		8.21	square foot
Sign Preparation	Design & Layout	25.00	0.00	+	0.00	hour
Sign Preparation	Cut Time	1.00	0.00		0.00	minute
Sign Preparation	Weeding & Application	12.00	0.00		0.00	hour
Sign Preparation	Preparing Sign Blank	12.00	0.00		0.00	hour
organ reparation	mataliation	23.00	0.00	·	0.00	104
Add Item	Delete Item Qua	antity: 1	÷ Sub	total:		\$9.0
Change Item	T One time	rate: 6.0%	3	Tax		\$0.5
			1	fotal:		\$9.5



One sample of Job Estimation.

Customizing Forms

You can customize the existing forms to match your needs:

- 1. From the Edit menu click Job Estimation.
- 2. Select the Form type that will be changed.
- 3. Change the form by clicking the buttons described below:



Add Item	Adds a new item to the list. Click this button and select the Category, Item and Type in the dialog box that is displayed. If the item is one that incurs only a one-time cost for the entire run of finished pieces, such as design time, check One time .
Change Item	Select one item in the list and click this button. Then, select the Category, Item and Type. The new item will replace the selected item.
Delete Item	Select one item in the list and click this button. The item is deleted from the list
Delete	Deletes the Form type from the list.

- 4. After all changes are done, click **Save** to save as a new form.
- 5. Enter a name that will appear in the Form list.
- 6. Click OK.

Customizing the Item List

The Estimation Editor allows you to customize your prices to correspond to your normal charges. Once you make a change using the Estimation Editor, it is reflected every time you insert an item that uses the data you changed.

You can customize the items list to match your needs:

- 1. From the Edit menu click Job Estimation.
- 2. Select the Estimation Editor Tab.
- 3. Select the **Category** type that will be changed. The following types are available:

Built In	Items that are automatically computed based on the design information such as working time and number of colors.
Color Printing	Items used in color printing.
Material Area	Computes based on the size of the drawing objects.
Services	Single item charges and non-automatic items.
Substrate	Computes based on drawing size.
Text Size	Computes based on the number and size of each character.

- 4. You can create a new category by clicking the **New** button. Clicking **Delete** button will delete a category and all its types and items.
- 5. To create or delete an item or type inside the selected category, click the buttons described below:

New Item Click this button and type the new item name to add a new item to the Item list.

- Delete ItemSelect an item in the list and click this button. The item is
deleted from the list.New TypeClick this button and type the new type name to add a
new item to the Type list.Delete TypeSelect a type in the list and click this button. The type is
deleted from the list
- 6. To change one type, select the type and item from the list and change the following fields:
 - Cost Allows you to enter a new default cost per unit for the selected type.
 - MarkupPercentage of the items cost to include as markup for profit
margin and to cover the cost of wasted materials.
 - **Minimum** Allows you to enter a new minimum charge for the selected type. To remove the minimum charge, enter zero (0.00).
 - **One Time** Use this option when a particular item will be charged only one time, independently from the value set in Quantity field.
 - Unit This is the unit of measure by which the row is calculated, such as inches, square foot or per hour, day, week, or month.
- You can print a list with all categories and their item and types clicking **Print** button.
- 7. Click OK.

Templates

Templates allow you to:

- Make multiple copies of your document using a pre-defined layout.
- Create documents such as invoices based on Job Information



Creating copies of a document. The copies are created using the following pattern: (2) 4.0 x 5.0 inches (2) 2.5 x 3.5 inches (4) 2.0 x 2.5 inches



Invoice created using the template feature

If necessary, the original document will automatically be rotated to fit into the space proved by the picture placeholders in the template.

Applying Templates

To apply a template to your document:

- 1. Open an existing document or create a new one.
- 2. From the **File** menu, point to **Templates** and then click **Apply Template**.
- 3. Choose the template from the list. The templates are named following the convention:

(2) 4 x 5 (2) 2.5 x 3.5 (4) 2 x 2.5



- 4. Choose Select.
- 5. A new document will be created using the template and the original document.
- When a template is applied to a document, any dimensions or registration marks contained in the document are converted into outlines.

Setting the Default Template

To select the template that will be selected by default in the Select Template dialog:

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. Select the **Tools** tab of the Preferences dialog.
- 3. Select Apply Template from the list of tools.
- 4. Select the template you want to make the default from the **Default Template** list.
- 5. Click OK.

Templates Toolbar

To display the Template toolbar, from the **File** menu, point to **Templates** and then click **Template Toolbar**.

The Templates toolbar will be used to create and modify existing templates. This toolbar contains buttons that represents the placeholders. Placeholders are fields that will be replaced by objects, images or information from the original document when a template is used.

The following placeholders are available:



The **Active Drawing** placeholder is replaced by the original document.

•

The **Used Colors** placeholder is replaced by a list with all colors used in the original document.

- Black
- Deep Red ■ Red
- Purple ■ Dark Brown
- Yellow
- Satin Gold
- Cocoa



2

The **Used Fonts** placeholder is replaced by a list with all fonts used in the original document.

The **Job Info** placeholder is replaced by a value from job info and other information from the original document.

Job Info	shows information
	from Job info - Job Tab.

Customer shows information Info from Job info -Customer Tab.

Other shows other information from the original document, such as number of colors, fonts and characters used. Arial-Regular Arial-Bold Arial-Italic Century-Regular Courier New-Regular

Job Number: 12345 Price: 6493.16 Order Taken By: John Doe Order Number: 12345 Order Date: 12/25/2001 Delivery Date: 12/27/2001

Creating New Templates

You can create your own custom templates:

- 1. Open a new document.
- 2. Select the placeholder from the Template toolbar.
- 3. Click and drag the cursor on design area.
- 4. Adjust the placeholder's attributes in DesignCentral Template Tab.
- 5. You can add other objects other than placeholders. Every object available in your software like bitmap, text and shapes can be used in a template.
- 6. From the **File** menu, point to **Templates** and then click **Save as Template**.

The template has been created. Template objects can be masked, colored and have an effect applied to them.

Editing Existing Templates

You can modify an existing template:

- 1. From the **File** menu, point to **Templates** and then click **Open Template**.
- 2. Select the template in the list.
- Adjust the placeholder's attributes in DesignCentral Template Tab.
- 4. From the File menu, point to Templates and then click Save Template or Save as Template.

The Save Template command will save the current template, Save as Template will save the template in a new file.

Changing Placeholders Attributes in DesignCentral

Each placeholder will have different fields in the DesignCentral - Template Tab.

For Drawing placeholder

Auto Orientation	Check to automatically change the orientation of the drawing to match the original file
🚺 13.649cm 🛛 📇	Height of the drawing placeholder.
🕂 20.528cm 🚊	Width of the drawing placeholder.

For Used Color placeholder



Width of the Used Color placeholder.

Height of the Used Color placeholder.

Font and style used in the color description.

Size of the font used in color description.

Number of colors per line.

Shape of the color swatch used in color description.

For Used Fonts placeholder

🕂 20.528cm 🗄	Width of the Used Fonts placeholder.
🚺 13.649cm 🗮	Height of the Used Fonts placeholder.
珀 Arial 📃 💌	Font and style used in the font description.
Regular 📃 💌	
IA 25.400mm 芸	Size of the font used in font description.



Number of font descriptions per line.

For Job Info placeholder

File Name 💌

Other

Source of the information (Job info, customer info or Other).

ካ Arial	•
Regular	T
IA 25.400mm	

-

Information type.

Font and style used in the job info description.

Size of the font used in job info description.

Check this option to place a label before the information text. Edit the label text in the field right of this option.

Label



4. Using DesignCentral

DesignCentral displays an object's properties. It displays tabs and options appropriate for the selected object. For example, when a rectangle is selected, DesignCentral displays the width, height, corner style, and other properties appropriate to a rectangle. When text is selected, it displays the font, font style, character height and width, and other settings.

Displaying DesignCentral

To view DesignCentral:

• From the View menu, select **DesignCentral**.



DesignCentral

Entering Numerical Values

The software supports a number of unique features that make it easier to enter numerical values.

Using Spinner Controls



Use the spinner controls to increase or decrease the value. When you click, or click and hold, the mouse on one of the arrows, the value is increased or decreased incrementally. Using the arrow keys on your computer's keyboard will have the same effect.

Using Built-In Arithmetical Operations

The software is able to perform a number of calculations whenever a numerical value is being entered.

Automatic Unit Conversion

If you enter a value using a different unit of measurement than the default unit, the software will automatically convert the value to the default unit.

For instance, if your default unit is inches, you can enter a value of 1 ft,



and the software will convert the measurement to 12 in.

Supported units are:

in, "	inch
ft, '	foot
mm	millimeter
cm	centimeter
m	meter
pt	point

Calculation of Ratios

If you enter a ratio in the format **A:B**, the software will scale the previous value in the field by the ratio entered.

For instance, if a value is set to **12**, and you enter **2:3**, the new value will be **8**.

Calculation of Percentages

If you enter a percentage in the format **X%**, the software will scale the previous value in the field by the percentage entered.

For instance, if a value is set to **10**, and you enter **90%**, the new value will be **9**.

Simple Arithmetic Operators

If you enter a simple arithmetic expression, the software will calculate the result of the expression and enter that value in the field.

The available arithmetic operators, in order of precedence, are:

- I Division
- * Multiplication
- + Addition
 - Subtraction

For example, if you enter 1/8, the value 0.125 will be calculated.

Operator precedence determines the order in which the arithmetic operations will be calculated when more than one operation is specified. In the previous list, operators are listed from top to bottom in order of operator precedence. For instance, if you enter 6/2*3, the software will calculate 6/2 first then multiply the result by 3, yielding a result of 9.

Automatic Application of Entered Values and Arithmetic

Once you enter a numerical value, ratio, or arithmetic expression in a numerical field, the software will automatically apply that value after a brief delay. There is no need to select another field or click an "Apply" button in order to force a calculation or apply a new value to a job preview.



DesignCentral Tab

DesignCentral consists of several windows, known as "Tabs". The number of Tabs and the content vary according to the objects that you have selected in your document.

You can select a Tab, by clicking on its indicator in DesignCentral, or double-clicking the object. Each double-click will move to the next available Tab.

DesignCentral - Document Tab

Use the Document tab to specify the size of the drawing area and the color of the substrate (the background color). A number of standard document sizes are included. You can specify a custom drawing area size by entering new horizontal and vertical values.

To show the Document tab, do one of the following:

- Open DesignCentral and then click an empty area in the document.
- From the File menu, select Document Setup.

DesignCentral - Margin Tab

Use the Margin tab to specify the margins around a drawing area.

These margins are used when objects are aligned / distributed and also are useful for laying out elements symmetrically. See "Aligning Objects" on page 71 for more details.



DesignCentral - Size Tab

The Size Tab of DesignCentral allows you to change the size and position of selected objects. You can change objects by dragging the control points or by changing the numerical values in DesignCentral.

To change the size of an object:

1. Select the objects.

After selecting an existing object, the Size, Rotate and Object Tabs are available.

- 2. Change the size of an object by editing the values in the entry box at Size Tab or dragging the control points of the selected object.
- Checking **Proportional** ensures that the object will be scaled proportionally in both the width and height.

To change the position of an object:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Change the position by editing the values in the entry box or dragging the object.

The X, Y coordinates displayed in DesignCentral are the position of the reference point, measured from the origin. See "Rulers and Grid" on page 10 about how to change the origin.

You can change the reference point by using the Reference Grid. Each button in the grid corresponds to a point on the selected object. If you want to position the center of an object, click the center point in the point selection grid.



DesignCentral - Rotate Tab

The Rotate Tab of DesignCentral allows you to rotate, shear or mirror selected objects. You can change them either by dragging the object's control points or by changing the numerical values in DesignCentral.

Shear is the process that distorts one object by an angle, using one point as a reference; this point's position is fixed.



A rectangle sheared to an angle of 45 degrees

To rotate an object:

1. Select the objects.

After selecting an existing object, the Size, Rotate and Object Tabs

are available.

- 2. Select the point that will be fixed during the rotation:
 - Clicking one point on Reference Grid in DesignCentral Rotate Tab.

Or

- Click and drag the Reference Point to the desired position. CTRL while dragging fixes the Reference Point to the settings on the Reference Grid.
- Change the angle of rotation by editing the values in the entry box or dragging the Rotation points. Click the Rotate +90 degrees or Rotate -90 degrees button to rotate the object 90 degrees counterclockwise or clockwise.



DesignCentral - Rotate Tab

To shear an object:

1. Select the objects.

After selecting an existing object, the **Size**, **Rotate** and **Object** tabs are available.

- 2. Select the point that will be fixed during the shearing:
- Clicking one point on Reference Grid in DesignCentral Rotate Tab.

Or

- Click and drag the Reference Point to the desired position. **CTRL** key while dragging fixes the Reference Point to the settings on the Reference Grid.
- 3. Change the shear angle by editing the values in the entry box or dragging the Shear points.

To mirror an object:

1. Select the objects.

After selecting an existing object, the Size, Rotate and Object Tabs



are available.

Click **Flip X Axis** or **Flip Y Axis** in DesignCentral - Rotate Tab to mirror the selected object horizontally or vertically. 2.







Mirrored horizontally

Mirrored vertically



DesignCentral - Object Tab

The Object Tab will vary according to the objects that you have selected.

In some cases, the Object Tab consists of two tabs. For instance, when you select text, you have a Character Tab and a Paragraph Tab.



	- ×
A ≣	
🚡 Arial Black	-
Regular	-
IA 1.00cm	3
🛕 100.0% 🚊	
14 0.0° 🕂	A
ab 0.0% 🕂	
a <mark>b</mark> 0.00cm	3
tcd 1.97cm	

	- ×
* *	
X 9.16cm	
Y: 27.14cm	
🤣 🚺 0.00cm	-
5 0.0°	
0	
√ 5 0.00cm	-
√ ⁵ 0.0°	-

Object Tab when a Star is selected / created

Object Tab when a Text is selected / created

Object Tab when a Path is selected / created

When you are creating an object, only the Object Tab is visible. After selecting an existing object, the Size, Rotate and Object Tabs are available.

The Object Tab is not available when different types of objects (like text and rectangle) are selected. However, if you select objects with same type, their **common** properties are displayed in DesignCentral.



Object Tab when both rectangles are selected



DesignCentral - Effects Tab

When you apply an effect over an object, DesignCentral displays the Effect Tab, with all properties of the effect.

Ð



The Object Tab for the object where the effect was applied is not visible in DesignCentral, but you can still select it using the **Select Within** tool or doubleclicking the object with **CTRL** key pressed. See "Selecting Objects Within an Effect" on page 54 for more details.

DesignCentral - Effect Tab

DesignCentral - Setup Tab

Many of the changes you automatically make are applied as you change them. You will notice that some commands. contain two buttons (Apply / Cancel) on bottom right side of DesignCentral to confirm or cancel the command.

DesignCentral will open automatically if there is a Setup Tab associated with the command.





5. Using DesignEditor

DesignEditor is a powerful organizational tool to manage the various layers and objects in your drawing. You can choose to display some layers and hide others, delete or add layers, and do similar functions with individual objects.

Displaying DesignEditor

The DesignEditor consists of two screens: the Layers Tab and Objects Tab



DesignEditor - Layers Tab



DesignEditor - Objects Tab

To view the DesignEditor:

• From the View menu, select DesignEditor.

DesignEditor - Layers Tab

Layers are a convenient way to organize the elements of your design for easy access and editing. Think of layers as sheets of acetate stacked one on top of another. Where there is no image on a layer, you can see through to the layers below. Behind all of the layers is the Substrate and the Trash Layer.

The layer at the bottom of the tab is the bottom layer of your design, and the layer at the top of the tab is the topmost layer in the stack.

By default, each new drawing that you open has the following layers:

Substrate Layer	Represents the surface on which your design might be applied. You cannot delete, copy, or edit the substrate layer. However, you can move it to a different location in the stack, or hide it from view (so that its color is not visible).
Grid Layer	The Grid layer is placed immediately on top of the substrate layer. Use the grid to help you position objects in the drawing area. For more information about the Grids see "Rulers and Grid" on page 10.

Guide Layer The Guide layer contains the drawing Guides. For more information about Guides see "Guide" on page 12.

Trash LayerThe Trash layer contains the objects that were
deleted from your document. This layer allows
you to recover objects that were accidentally
deleted; see "Deleting Objects on page 75 for
more details about how to recover deleted
objects.

Layer 1, 2, 3... These layers contain the actual objects that were created in your document. You can have as many layers as you like for each design.

The layer that is highlighted in the Layers tab is called the **Active** layer. At any given time, one of the layers must be active.

When a layer with a disabled Edit property is Active, most of editing tools and commands will not be available.



When you right click on any of the layers, a menu is displayed and the following commands are available:

New Layer	A new layer is created. The new layer will be added above the active layer.
Delete Layer	The active layer is deleted.
Duplicate Layer	A copy of the active layer is created. The new layer will be added above the active layer.
Rename	Changes the active layer's name.
Properties	Shows the properties for the active layer.

You can also click the buttons on the top of the DesignEditor - Layer Tab to perform some of the above commands.



Showing Layer Properties

Each layer has the following properties:

Visible	T	Specifies if the layer is visible or not. Always disabled for Trash Layer.
Editable	1	Specifies if the layer is editable or not. Not available for Trash, Grid and Substrate layers.
Printable	8	Specifies if the layer will be printed or not. Always disabled for Trash Layer.
Cuttable	P	Specifies if the layer is cuttable or not. Always disabled for Trash and Grid Layer

You can change the layer properties by doing one of the following:

- Clicking the icon on the DesignEditor Layer Tab. When the • property is disabled, it displays a "X" over the icon.
 - 裔

Visible Property Enabled

Visible Property Disabled 憲

Right-clicking the layer and selecting the **Properties** command from the menu. Edit the property in the Layer Properties dialog box that will be displayed.

Changing the Layer Order

The order of the layer in the stack determines how the objects are displayed in your design area.





layers

You can re-arrange the order of the stack by simply clicking and dragging a layer to a new position. A horizontal dashed line displays to indicate where in the stack the layer will be placed.

Merging Layers

When you merge one layer with another, all elements of the layer that you merged are added to the target layer.

To merge layers:

- 1. Click and hold the mouse on the on the layer you want to merge.
- 2. While holding down the **CTRL** key, drag the layer to the layer you want to merge it with.

A horizontal dashed line displays directly over the target layer to indicate that the layer will be merged.

3. Release the mouse button.

Changing the Layer Color

Each layer is associated with a color. For the Guide and Grid layers, this color is used to show its objects. For the Layers 1, 2, 3... this color is used to:

If the option "Show Layer Color" in Show Fill preferences (see "Showing Object's Fill" on page 15 for more details) is selected, all objects are displayed using this color in wireframe mode.

- The border of selected objects is displayed in this color.
- If the **Show Preview** option is off (see "Showing Preview" on page 17), the preview for that layer is displayed in this color.

To change the color of a layer, do one of the following:

- Drag any color from the Color Swatch and drop it directly onto the color icon on the DesignEditor Layer Tab dialog box.
- Open the Layer Properties dialog box and click the swatch, then select a color from the list.

DesignEditor - Objects Tab

Every time you draw a shape, create text, or add any element to your design, information about that element is stored in the Objects Tab of the DesignEditor.

- Each object is assigned a number to distinguish it from other objects of the same type (e.g.: Rectangle 1, 2, 3 ..).
- Objects are stacked in the order they are created, with new objects being placed on top of older objects.
- Effects, such as shadows, stripes, and outlines, always appear higher in the stack than the object to which they are applied.

The Objects Tab is an excellent way to view the structure of your document. You can see the elements in each layer of your document, as well as the various effects and other changes that you've applied to each element.

Selecting Objects Using the Object Tab

The DesignEditor - Objects Tab allows you to quickly locate and select specific objects. This is useful when your design is complex, and selecting individual objects in the conventional way (pointing and clicking) has become difficult.

To select an object, select the object's name in the DesignEditor - Objects Tab.

SHIFT or CTRL keys selects multiple objects.

You can even select individual objects among compounded or grouped objects.

When you select an object in the design area, the corresponding item is automatically highlighted on the DesignEditor - Objects Tab.

Changing Objects Order

You can change the order of an object by clicking and dragging an object to a new location in the stack. You can change the stack order of objects within a particular layer, or you can move objects from one layer to another.

- 1. Click on the object that you would like to move / reorder in the Objects Tab.
- 2. Drag the object to the desired location.
 - **SHIFT** key while you drag **replaces** the highlighted object with the one you're moving.
 - **CTRL** key while dragging **duplicates** the object and places it in the new location.
 - Right clicking while dragging displays a menu with the following options:
 - Move and Insert
 - Move and Replace
 - Copy and Insert
 - Copy and Replace
- 3. Release the mouse button when the object immediately under the object to be stacked is highlighted.

Renaming Objects

To rename an object in DesignEditor - Objects Tab:

- 1. Click the object in DesignEditor Objects Tab
- 2. Click the same object again.
- 3. Type the new name.



Applying Effects

When you move an object underneath an effect, that effect is applied to the object. This can be useful when you have applied a number of effects to a particular object and want to apply those same effects to another object. To do this, simply move the object within the hierarchy of the effect, or group of effects, that you want to apply.

When you apply effects in this way, they are applied to the objects underneath them as a group. It is not the same as individually selecting an object and re-applying the same effects.



6. Selecting Objects

There are several ways to select objects, from the most basic point-andclick method to sophisticated selection criteria. Selected objects display with a selection border and Control Points around them, to distinguish selection from other objects.

The color of the Selection Border can be specified by using the DesignEditor - Layer Tab. See "Changing the Layer Color" on page 49 for more details.

Selecting Objects Using the Select Tool

To select objects using the Select tool:

- 1. Choose **Select** tool.
- 2. Click the object that you want to select.

To select multiple objects, hold down the **SHIFT** key, and then click on multiple items.

You can make a selection by using two modes. When you are in the **By touching** mode, any object that intersects the bounding box is selected. When you are in the **By fully enclosing** mode, the selection is restricted to those objects that are fully enclosed in the bounding box.

To select objects using the bounding box:

- 1. Choose **Select** tool.
- 2. Click and drag, creating a bounding box around those objects you want to select.
- Holidng the **CTRL** key while creating the bounding box temporarily toggles the selection mode to the other setting.



Changing Default Selection Mode

The default setting in your program is **By touching**. To change the default setting, double-click the **Select** tool, or do the following:

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences command.
- 2. Click **Tools** Tab.

- 3. Click Select tool on the list.
- 4. Change the selection mode.
- 5. Click OK.

Selecting Objects Within an Effect

To select an object within an effect (an object with an outline, for example):

- 1. Choose Select Within tool.
- 2. Click the object that you want to select.

Or

- 1. Choose Select tool.
- 2. CTRL key and double-click the object that you want to select.



Rectangle selected within an Outline effect

Selecting Objects Using the TAB Key

Pressing the **TAB** key selects the next object. The selection order follows the order that the objects were created.



Selecting Similar Objects

This feature selects all objects with similar shape to the currently selected object.

- 1. Select an object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Select and then click Select Similar Objects command.



Selecting Objects With The Same Color

This feature selects all objects with a similar color to the currently selected object.

- 1. Select an object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Select and then click Select Similar Color command.

Selecting Object Based on Attributes

You can specify objects to select based on a object's type, fill and effects. For example: you can select all blue rectangles or all text.

To select objects based on attributes:

- 1. From the **Edit** menu, point to **Select** and then click **Select by Attributes** command.
- Select which attribute (Object, Fill or Effect Tab) will be used in the selection.



Object Tab

- Select **Show all** to display all the possible type of objects, fills, or effects.
- Select **All types** to select all of the elements listed on the displayed tab.
- Choose Selection only to limit your selection to the group of currently selected objects. In this way, you can refine your selection to an area that you define. This option is unavailable, if you don't have any object selected.
- 3. Select the type of attribute will be used in the selection.
- 4. Click OK.

Selecting Objects Using DesignEditor

You can use the DesignEditor - Objects Tab to select one or more objects. See "Selecting Objects Using Object Tab" on page 50 for more details.

Selecting All Objects

To select all objects in a document:

• From the Edit menu, point to Select and then click Select All command.

Deselecting All Objects

To deselect all selected objects:

• From the Edit menu, point to Select and then select Deselect All command.

Or

Click an empty area.

Inverting Selection

To invert the selection:

• From the Edit menu, point to Select and then select Invert Selection command.





7. Arranging Objects

This chapter describes how to arrange, duplicate and manipulate objects in the design area.

Resizing Objects

Objects may be resized by using the following methods:

Resizing Using DesignCentral

Use DesignCentral when you have to adjust an objects size to a precise numeric value.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select the Resize command.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral:

↔ 39.324cm 🚊	New width of the selected objects.
1 23.491cm 🗄	New height of the selected objects.
☆ 100.0% 🚊	Percentage that the width will be scaled.
100.0% 🚊	Percentage that the height will be scaled.
	The point selected in this grid will remain stationary after the resizing.
Proportional	Check this option to assure that selected objects will be resized proportionally in width and height.
Apply scale to all	Check this option to resize all objects in the document, following the scaling that will be done in the selected objects.

4. Click Apply.

You can also resize using DesignCentral - Size tab, but some of the above options will not be available.

Resizing by Dragging Control Points

You can drag the **Scale** Control Points around an object or group of objects to resize.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Position the cursor on a Scale Control Point.



- 3. Click and drag the **Scale** Control Point.
 - CTRL key while dragging uses the center line of the objects as a stationary point.
 - SHIFT key while dragging scales not proportionally.



Resizing to the Same Size

Selected objects may be formatted to have the same height and width.

1. Select the objects.

If you select the objects by dragging a bounding box, the size of the first object is used as a reference. If you select the objects by clicking them with the **SHIFT** key pressed, the size of the first selected object is used as a reference.

2. From the Arrange menu, point to Sizing and select either Same Width or Same Height.

Moving Objects

You can move objects using one of the following methods:

Moving Objects by Dragging

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Place the cursor over the object.

When the **Show Fills** is disabled, placing the cursor inside the object does not change to move mode. You must place the cursor over the outline of the object.

- 3. Click and drag to move the object to a new position.
- **CTRL** key while dragging creates a copy of the original object.
- SHIFT key while dragging constrains the new position.

Moving Objects Using DesignCentral

Use DesignCentral when you have to move the objects to a precise position.

1. Select the objects.

DesignCentral displays the Size Tab.

2. Adjust the X, Y values in DesignCentral.

×	72.889cm 📑	3	New horizontal position of the selected objects.
∇A	71.001 om	1	

Y: 71.831cm 📄 New vertical position of the selected objects.

The point where the X, Y coordinates will refer in above fields.

Rotating, Shearing and Mirroring Objects

You can rotate or mirror objects by using the following methods:

Rotating, Shearing and Mirroring Using DesignCentral

Use DesignCentral to rotate objects to a precise numeric value.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Rotate command.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral.



New angle of selected objects.

Shear angle that will applied to the selected objects.

Rotates selected objects 90 degrees counter clockwise or clockwise.

Mirrors selected objects horizontally or vertically.

A copy of original object will be kept after rotating or mirroring.

The point selected will be used as stationary point.

4. Click Apply.

Keep Original

Rotating may also be done using DesignCentral, but some of the above options may not be available.

Rotating and Shearing Dragging Control Points

You can drag the **Rotate** and **Shear** control points around an object or a group of objects to rotate or shear them.

1. Select the objects.

- 2. Click **Rotate** Tab in DesignCentral.
- 3. Adjust the **stationary point** either by selecting one point in DesignCentral point grid, or clicking and dragging the stationary point. Holding the **CTRL** key while dragging the stationary point moves to a point of the point grid.



- 4. Position the cursor on a Rotate or Shear control point.
- 5. Click and drag the control point.
 - Hold the Ctrl key while dragging to create a copy of the original object.
 - Hold the Shift key while dragging to constrain the rotation or shear angle to increments of 45 degrees.

Creating Mirrored Objects

Use the Mirror command when you want to create mirrored objects that are separated by a specific distance.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Mirror command.

A mirrored image is displayed, along with a Mirror Line. If the mirror line is not visible, increase the distance in DesignCentral.



3. Adjust the **Distance** in DesignCentral. This value is the total distance separating the original and mirrored image. Check **Keep Original** to create a copy of the original image.



You can also click and drag the control point in the middle of the Mirror Line to adjust the distance. Click and drag a point located at Mirror Line's end to adjust the angle. **SHIFT** key constrains the angle while dragging.

4. Click Apply.

Deskewing Objects

Sometimes a scanned image is slanted because the original image was not properly positioned on the scanner. To make the image horizontal or vertical, use the Deskew command.

The Deskew command rotates the objects, in order to make a baseline horizontal or vertical.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Deskew** and select either **Horizontal** or **Vertical**.
- 3. Click and drag to create the baseline.



Creating the baseline



Duplicating Objects

There are several ways to duplicate an object:

Duplicating Objects by Dragging

The easiest and fastest way to create one copy of the object, select the object and drag with **CTRL** key pressed. **SHIFT** key while dragging restrains the position of the copy.



Duplicating Objects Using Copy and Paste

This method is recommended when you want to make several copies in different places.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Copy command or press CTRL + C.
- 3. From the Edit menu, select Paste command or press CTRL + V.
- 4. Move the cursor to position the copy and click.

Click **TAB** key changes the cursor position in the bounding box. **ESC** key exits the paste process. **ENTER** to place the copy.





Copy the object ...

... And Paste

Sometimes you want to create copies with a specific distance from the original object. In this case, you must change the preferences first:

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. Select Tools Tab.
- 3. Select **Paste** tool from the list on left side of dialog box.
- 4. Check Auto-place on paste and import option.
- Set the distance where the copies will be posted from original object.

Once the preferences are set:

- 6. Select the objects.
- 7. From the Edit menu, select Copy command or press CTRL + C.
- 8. From the Edit menu, select Paste command or press CTRL + V.





Copy the object ...
Duplicating Objects Using Paste Special

In Windows, you can use the Paste Special feature. Paste Special allows you to select the format of pasted data.

To use the Paste Special:

- 1. Copy the objects. You can copy and paste objects from other programs.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Paste Special.
- 3. Select the format of pasted data.
- 4. Click OK.

Duplicating Objects Using the Duplicate Command

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Duplicate.

Duplicating Objects Using DesignEditor

To copy objects using DesignEditor, see "Changing Objects Order" on page 51.

Duplicating Objects Using the Step and Repeat Command

Use Step and Repeat command to create multiple copies of objects in a precise position and arrangement.

You have the following patterns to select from:

• Block pattern, with all copies aligned in a specified set of rows and columns.



• Diagonal pattern, with all copies aligned in a diagonal line.



• Circular pattern, with all copies aligned over an arc.



- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Step and Repeat command.
- 3. Select the proper Tab in DesignCentral.
- 4. The following values can be adjusted in DesignCentral:





and the center point.

distributed.

to the left (bottom) side of the next object.

Inclination of the line that joins the original object



🚬 🛛 [22.985cm 🗄

distributed. Specifies whether or not to rotate the copies on the arc.

The portion of the circle where the copies are

Radius of the circle where the copies are





Rotate Objects Enabled Rotate Objects Disabled

You can control the copies in **Block** and **Diagonal** pattern by dragging the Spacing / Copies control point at the upper left corner of the bounding box.

- Drag the point to adjust the number of copies, keeping the spacing unchanged
- **SHIFT** key while dragging adjusts the spacing, keeping the number of copies unchanged.

You can control the copies in **Circular** pattern by dragging the Center control point.

- Drag the point to adjust the Angle and the Radius.
- **SHIFT** key while dragging adjusts the adjusts the Radius, keeping the Angle value unchanged.

5. Click Apply.

Working with Auto Serialization

Serialization allows you to create multiple copies of objects. However, It is different from Step and Repeat, since each copy will have a **Serial Text**, which is a text following a sequential numbering.



Rotate Objects

To Auto Serialize:

- 1. Select the objects.
- At least one of the objects must be text.
- 2. From Arrange menu, select Auto Serialize.

Every word from the selected text will be displayed in the **Text Selection** box, located on the right side of the dialog.

- 3. Select the text to be replaced. You can select multiple items.
- 4. Adjust the parameters:

Number of Copies	The number of copies to be created.
Copies in a row	The number of copies that will be placed in a row.
Horizontal spacing	Horizontal spacing between copies.
Vertical spacing	Vertical spacing between objects.

- 5. If you have a Tab delimited file, select it.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. To manually edit the fields, select the field and then type the new text in **Edit Text** field.
- 8. To use sequential data, select one field and then click **Serialization**.

Adjust the parameters:

- Numeric The serialized text will be a numeric value.
- **Character** The serialized text will be a regular text. The serialization will be performed starting from the rightmost character.
- Start Starting value. This value must be in accordance with above selection (Numeric or Character).

Increment The increment in the serial text.

- To save the current configuration as a Data file, click **Export**.
- 9. Click Finish.

Grouping Objects

Grouping is the process of combining several objects into one single set of objects. Grouped objects are moved, resized and rotated as one object.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Group** and then select **Group** command.

To release the last grouped objects.

- 1. Select the grouped objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Group** and then select **Ungroup** command

To release all grouped objects

- 1. Select the grouped objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Group** and then select **Ungroup All** command.



Compounding Objects

Compounding lets you view overlapping objects exactly as they will appear when cut. When you want to create a hole through an object, use the Compound feature.



Another example of using a compound:



To compound objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Compound** and then select **Compound** command.

If objects with different colors are selected, the compound object will have the color of the topmost object.

To compound objects based on their color:

- From the Arrange menu, point to Compound and then select Compound by Color command.
- Objects compounded by color are converted to outlines.







Original objects

Normal compound

Multiple levels of compounds can be made.

To release the last compound:

- 1. Select the compounded object.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Compound** and then select **Uncompound** command.

Masking Objects

Masking is the process of clipping objects, vector or bitmap objects to a shape of a vector object. A mask can be described as a window that you look through to see the objects beneath it. Everything outside the mask will be hidden.

The topmost object is the mask. If you want to use more than one object as a mask, you must group them first.

A bitmap object that has been masked cannot be traced. Before tracing the bitmap, it must be unmasked.

To create a mask:

- 1. Select the objects. The topmost object will be used as a mask
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Mask** and then select **Mask** command.



The Mask (ABC) and the bitmap that will be masked



The masked image

Unmasking objects will return the objects to its original shape and size.

To unmask objects:

- 1. Select the masked object.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Mask** and then select **Unmask** command.

Locking Objects

You can lock some objects. Locked objects can be selected, but cannot be edited, moved or resized.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Lock** and then select **Lock** command.

A padlock displays on the object.



In some cases, the padlock is placed in a corner and when you select the object, the Control Point will overlap the Padlock.

In a path, you can change the padlock's position by changing the starting point of the path. See "Changing Starting Point" on page 151 about how to change the starting point.

Padlock symbol

To release the lock in a object:

- 1. Select the objects.
- The only way to select locked objects is to click each of them with the **Select** tool.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Lock** and then select **Unlock** command.

Changing Object Order

As you create objects or import files into your document, every object will have a position in the stacking order. The first object that you create will be in the bottom of the stack. This order will be reflected when the objects overlap.

You can change the object's order in the stack:

- Select the objects. 1.
- 2 From the Arrange menu, point to Order and then select the new position in the stack.

To Front

To Back

Moves the selection to the top of the stack, in front of all other objects.



Back One

Moves the selection one position down in the stack.



You can also change the order, dragging the object in DesignEditor -Object Tab, see "Changing Objects Order" on page 51 for more details.

Aligning Objects

Align allows you to align objects in relation to one of the objects, or to align objects to the design area.

To align objects to another object:

1. Select the objects.

If you select the objects by dragging a bounding box, the first object in the order stack is used as the **Stationary Object**. If you select the objects by clicking them with **SHIFT** key pressed, the first selected object is used as **Stationary Object**.

2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Align** and select how the alignment will be done.

In the example below, the green square is used as the Stationary Object for the alignment.



To align objects to the design area:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Align** and then select how the alignment will be done.
- If you have a margin set, the objects will be aligned to this margin.





Distributing Objects

Your software allows you to adjust the spacing and position of the objects using the following methods:

- Distribute objects
- Distribute objects to design area
- Spacing
- Nesting

Distributing Objects

To distribute objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Distribute** and select how the distribution will be done.



Distributing Objects to the Design Area

To distribute objects to the design area:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Distribute** and then select how the distribution will be done.

In a **Left Edge to Page** distribution, the leftmost object is moved to a position that touches the left margin, the rightmost object is moved to the right margin and all objects between them are spread keeping the distance between *Left Edges* equal.





Spacing Objects

The **Spacing** command allows you to distribute objects separated by an exact value.

1. Select the objects.

If you select the objects by dragging a bounding box, the first object in the order stack is used as the **Stationary Object**. If you select the objects by clicking them with **SHIFT** key pressed, the first selected object is used as **Stationary Object**.

- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Spacing command.
- 3. Adjust the following values in DesignCentral:



4. Click Apply.

Nesting Objects

Nesting distributes objects over a specified area, optimizing the material.

1. Select the objects.

- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Nest.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral:

All colors	Select the color of the objects that will be nested. If you want to nest all objects, regardless of their color, select All Colors.
1.357cm 📑	Height of the panel, where the selected objects will be distributed.
🛏 132.120cm 📑	Width of the panel, where the selected objects will be distributed.
→ ► 0.051cm <u>-</u>	Distance between objects after the nesting.
Break text	When this option is checked, all text will be separated into individual characters and save more material.
Free rotate	When this option is checked, the objects will be rotated to increase the compression ratio and save more material.
Compress Ratio	Displays the compression achieved by nesting the objects.

You can also click and drag the **Resize Panel** Control Point located on upper right corner of the panel area. When the panel size is too small to fit

all objects, its border changes color from black to red.

B





Original objects in their original position

Dragging the Resize Panel Control Point





Nested objects with Break text On, Free rotate Off



Nested objects with Break text On, Free rotate On

Snapping Objects

You can activate the snap feature and then create, edit and move shapes to precise locations.



There are five types of snapping:

- Snap to Point
 Snap to Guide
- Snap to Intersection
- Snap to Grid
 Snap to Edge
- Snap to Center of Gravity

To activate the snap, from the **View** menu, point to **Snap** and then select **Snap to** [...]

Some examples of snap:



Deleting Objects

You can remove objects by deleting them from the document.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Press the **BACKSPACE** or **DELETE** key, or from the **Edit** menu, select **Clear**.

The object will be deleted, but will not be entirely removed from your document. When you delete an object, the deleted object will be placed in a Trash Layer.

To completely remove objects from your document, without moving them to the Trash Layer:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Cut.

To restore objects from the Trash Layer:

- 1. Select the objects in DesignEditor.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Trash Can and then select Recover.



To remove all objects from the Trash Layer:

• From the Edit menu, point to the Trash Can and then select Empty Trash.

Clear Transform

After scaling, rotating or transforming any item geometrically you can return the item back to its original state by using the Clear Transform function.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, click Clear Transform.

8. Working with Color

Your software provides you with an array of powerful tools for applying color. In this section, you'll learn how to apply color to an element in your design.

Each object in your design can have a **Fill color** and **Stroke color**.



The Fill Color can be a Solid Color, Pattern or Gradient.



Available Color Models

Colors can be defined using the following models:

- **RGB** The color is expressed as a combination of red, green and blue values. This is the color model most commonly used for computer graphics.
- **CMYK** The color is expressed as a combination of cyan, magenta, yellow and black values. This is the color model most commonly used in color printing.
- LAB The CIE LAB model is a device-independent color model that expresses color using a luminance value and two chrominance values.
- **HSB** The color is expressed using values for hue, saturation and brightness.
- Spot The color is selected from a number of lists of standard ink or ribbon colors provided by established suppliers.
- **Duotone** Duotone colors are made by overlaying two spot colors. The color that is printed first is called the *base* color, and the color that is printed on top of the base is called the *top* color.

Applying Colors From the Swatch Table

You can apply colors to a design element using the Swatch Table.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Select the desired color in the Swatch Table. Hold down the **CTRL** key to apply the color to the object's stroke.

You can also apply colors by clicking and dragging directly from the Swatch Table.



When you click and drag the cursor into the object in the design area, the cursor changes, depending on its location.



Fill the object over which the cursor is positioned with the selected color.

Change the color of the stroke over which the cursor is positioned with the selected color.



Change the color of the substrate to the selected color.

The swatches change appearance based on the color mode in use. Spot colors have a small dot on the right side of the swatch. Duotone colors have two dots on the right side of the swatch.

Process Color

Spot Color 🤷

Duotone Color 🔛

Applying Colors Using the Color Mixer

The Color Mixer dialog box is used to specify and apply color to elements in your design.

To view the Color Mixer, from the **View** menu, select **Color Mixer**.

		X
RGB		-
R:	154	÷
G:	128	÷
B:	123	÷
Color Mixer		

When you select an object, the fill color is displayed in the swatch located in the upper left side of the Color Mixer. When multiple objects

Use the list in the upper right corner of the mixer to specify a color

are selected, the Color Mixer displays the color of the first object.

model (RGB, CMYK, LAB, HSV, Spot or Duotone).

Once you specify a color model to use, there are several ways to specify a color in the mixer:

- Enter the numerical values or click the up / down arrows on the right side of the numerical field.
- Click and drag the channel sliders.



• Click and drag the mouse over the color picker located at the bottom of the Color Mixer. When you locate the color you want, release the mouse button.



Using the Color Mixer, it's possible to specify colors that are beyond the boundaries of the selected color space. When you do this, a warning icon is displayed next to the color swatch, along with a small swatch that is actually a functional button. Clicking the gamut correction button adjusts the color so that it fits within the target gamut. After you click the button, the color is redefined, and both the icon and the gamut correction button disappear.



The warning icon only appears when you're viewing objects in RGB, HSV or LAB color space. The software checks to see if the color you specified can be reproduced in CMYK color space accurately, based on the currently active printer profile that you selected in the Color Settings dialog box (for more details see "Configuring the System for Color Printing" on page 209). If you do not correct the gamut, the color that you selected will not print accurately.

Applying Colors Using the Eyedropper

Another way to apply color is with the Eyedropper tool.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Click Eyedropper. 🖊
- 3. Move the cursor over the object or bitmap with the color that you want the selected object to be and click.
- CTRL key applies the color to the selected object's stroke.

You may use the same method to apply patterns and gradients.

To select a particular color from a pattern or gradient, follow the previous steps, but hold down the **SHIFT** key while you select the color.

Setting the Default Fill / Stroke Color

When a new object is created, the default Stroke and Fill colors will be used. These colors are displayed in the lower right corner of the design area.

To change the default Fill / Stroke colors:

- 1. Click an empty area on the document.
- Drag the desired color from Color Swatch or Color Mixer into the default Fill / Stroke color indicator at lower right corner of the design area.

Once the default Fills / Strokes color are set, all new objects in this document will be created using these colors.

To set the default fill color for all documents created in the software, drag the desired color to the leftmost position, just after the transparent color.



When you are editing bitmaps, the lower right corner of the design area will show the foreground and background colors.

You can change the background and foreground colors using the same methods used to change the default fill and stroke colors.

Working with the Swatch Table

Swatch Tables (*.swt) include a group of standard colors, gradients and patterns that can be applied to objects in your design.

To display the Swatch Table, from the View menu, select Swatch Table.

The Swatch Table can be moved to a different location or resized by clicking and dragging. If necessary, use the scroll arrows to view other colors in the palette.



Background

colors



Background and Foreground

Foreground

Stroke 🗖 Fill 🔳 Default Stroke and

Fill



A double click in the title bar returns the Swatch Table to its original position.

You can view the Swatch Table as a list, showing additional properties for each color.

- 1. Drag the Swatch Table to the design area, making it a floating palette.
- 2. Right-click the Swatch Table and point to List View.
- 3. To return to the Palette view, point to **Palette View** in the same menu.

As default, the Swatch Table shows all colors, gradients and patterns available. To select one type of fill to be displayed in the Swatch Table, right-click the Swatch Table and point to **Show**, and then click the Fill type (**All, Color, Pattern or Gradient**).

Creating New Swatch Tables

You can build custom Swatch Tables that contain only the colors that you specify. To create a custom Swatch Table:

• From the **View** menu, point to **Color** and then select **New Table** command.

The new palette, which contains only one color (Transparent), replaces the current palette.

You can add colors to the palette in a number of ways:

- Click and drag colors from the Color Mixer.
- Add new set of colors from Color Libraries.
- Merge colors from the document.
- Create a pattern based on the objects from your document.
- Using the Color Specs dialog box.

Adding New Colors Using the Color Mixer

- 1. Open the Color Mixer dialog box.
- Create the new color that will be added. See "Applying Colors Using the Color Mixer" on page 78 for more information.





Adding New Colors Using Color Specs

- 1. Open the Color Specs dialog box.
- Create a new color or add from an existing Color Library. See "Using Color Specs" on page 85 for more information about the Color Specs.

Adding New Colors From Color Libraries

1. From the View menu, point to Color and then select Open Table or Import Table command.

If you select **Open Table** or **Load Table**, all colors in the Swatch Table are replaced by the colors from the Color Library. If you select **Import Table** or **Merge Table**, the colors from the Color Library are added to the existing Color Swatch.

- 2. Select the Color Library file.
- B More Color Libraries can be found in Swatch folder.
- 3. Click Open button.

All colors from selected Color Library are added to the Color Swatch.

You can also add colors from a Color Library using the Color Spec - see "Color Specs - Library Tab" on page 87 for more details.

Merging Used Colors From a Document into the Swatch Table

If you've created a number of custom colors, but have not added them to the palette, you can use the Merge From Document command. The document will be scanned and all of the colors found will be added to the Swatch Table. If your document has gradient fills, they will also be added.

• From the View menu, point to Color and then select Merge from Document command.

Adding and Creating New Patterns

- 1. Select the objects.
- You can also create patterns from bitmaps.
- 2. From the View menu, point to Color and then select Define Pattern command.

The new pattern is added to the palette. To edit the pattern after you have created, double-click on it, and edit it from the "Advanced Settings" dialog box.

Saving Swatch Tables

Swatch Table palettes are stored as files, and they can be saved like any other file.

• From the View menu, point to Color and then select Save Table or Save Table As command

Merging Similar Colors

You can merge colors in Swatch Table that have different names but the same color values.

• From the View menu, point to Color and then select Merge Similar Colors command.

Deleting Colors From the Swatch Table

You can delete undesired colors from the Swatch Table:

- 1. Move the mouse cursor over the color you want to delete in the Swatch Table.
- 2. Right-click the Swatch Table and point to **Delete** command.
- The "Transparent" color cannot be deleted.

You can also delete colors from the Swatch Table using the Color Specs dialog box. See "Deleting Colors Using Color Specs" on page 87 for more details.

Changing Color Order in the Swatch Table

There are several ways to change the color position in the Swatch Table

• Click and drag the color over the Swatch Table



- Using the **Color Specs** dialog box. See "Changing The Order of Colors Using Color Specs" on page 87 for more details.
- Right-click the Swatch Table and point to Sort command. You can sort the Swatch Table by Name, RGB / HSV values, Vendor, Type or Part #.

Modifying Existing Color Libraries (Windows Only)

Color Libraries are files containing a collection of colors. Color collections can be based on a particular manufacturer, an industry standard or similar concept. Like Color Swatches, you can create a new custom Color Library or modify an existing one.



Creating New Color Libraries by Using Measurement Devices

- 1. From the View menu, point to Color and then select Modify Color Library command.
- 2. Click New.
- 3. Select the **Vendor** and **Type** from the list or enter a new name.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. Enter the new color name and the part number.
- 6. Click Measure and measure the color using the device.
- The measurement device can be defined in the **Edit** menu, pointing to **Preferences** and then selecting **Meter Options** in the **Tool** Tab.

Changing Existing Color Libraries

- 1. From the **View** menu, point to **Color** and then select **Modify Color** Library command.
- 2. Select the Vendor and Type from the list.
- 3. Select the color that will be changed in the list.
- 4. Type the new Name / Part # for the color or click **Delete** to remove the color from the Color Library. You can also measure a new color using a measurement device and replace the selected color.
- 5. Click **Save** to save the changes. If this button is unavailable, click another color in the list.

Using Color Specs

Color Specs dialog box is used to define all properties about colors. To view the Color Specs dialog box, do one of the following:

- Double click one solid color on the Swatch Table.
- From the **View** menu, point to **Color** and then select **Color Specs** command.

All colors		-	🔽 Use cold	ir mana	gement	
🕏 📕 Blar	ck		Input profile:		Color setting default	•
S Gra	y ite		Rendering in	tent:	Color setting default	•
🖲 📕 Salı	mon Pink	_	Color info			
🛎 📕 Bur	gundy		Vendor:	Defa	ult	
🗐 📕 Rec 🗊 📒 Rus	d st Orange		Category:	Enha	nced	
🖲 📒 Mar	nilla Yellow		Part #:			
) 🔍 📕 Gol Name: Bla	d ick	_	Comments:			
Mode: RG	BB	-			n. 🛛 🖃	
The second se						
					G: U 🛨	
					B: 0 🛨	
New	Delete	Mea	asure			

Color Specs - Color Tab

In the Color Specs - Color Tab dialog box you can set all the properties from each color.

From the list on top of the dialog box, you can select the colors that will be displayed in the list. You can select any of the following:

Swatch Table	All colors defined in the present Swatch Table.
Used colors	All colors used in your present document.
All colors	All colors from the Swatch table and also the colors used in the document.

Each color in the list will have an icon on the left side. This icon indicates if a color is being used in the document.



The color is being used in the document. Clicking this icon hides all objects in your document using this color.



The color is being used in the document, but all objects using it are hidden. Clicking this icon will show all objects in your document that it is using this color.



The color is not being used in the document.

For each color you can control the following properties:

Color Name The color name defined in the Swatch Table.

Color Mode The color mode can be RGB, CMYK, LAB, HSV, Spot or Duotone. Spot colors have a small dot on the right side of the swatch. Duotone colors have two dots on the right side of the swatch.

Process Color



Duotone Color 🔛

- **Color Values** The color values for selected color. The parameters vary according to the color mode selected.
- Color Info The Vendor, Type, Part# and Comments defined in the Swatch Table.

Use Color If this option is selected, the settings from the color management system are used to print this color. You can set a different Input Color Profile and Rendering Intent for each color.

Creating New Colors Using Color Specs

- 1. Click New.
- 2. Change the color name and enter the values in Color Info.
- 3. Select the color mode from the list.
- 4. Adjust the new color:
 - Enter the numerical values or click the up / down arrows on the right side of the numerical field.
 - Click and drag the mouse over the color picker located at the bottom of the dialog box. When you locate the color you want, release the mouse button.



• Click the color swatch located on the right side of color mode field. The standard Color Setting dialog box is displayed.

While adjusting the colors, the swatch will show the original color on the top, and the new color on the bottom.

New Color _____ Original Color

You can also measure a new color with a measuring device and use the measured color values. Click the **Measure** button.

The measurement device can be defined in the **Edit** menu, pointing to **Preferences** and then selecting **Meter Options** in the **Tool** Tab.

Deleting Colors Using Color Specs

- 1. Select the color that you want to delete from the list.
- 2. Click Delete.

Changing Colors Using Color Specs

- 1. Select the color that you want to change from the list.
- Change the color name, mode or info and adjust the new color using the methods described in "Creating New Colors Using Color Specs" at page 86.

Changing The Order of Colors Using Color Specs

To reorder the colors in the palette using the Color Specs, click on the color in the color list and drag it to its new location.



Color Specs - Library Tab

In the Color Specs - Library Tab dialog box you can remove colors from the Swatch Table and add colors from Color Libraries into the Swatch Table.

- 1. Select Vendor and Type from the list.
- 2. From the list on the right side, select the color that will be added to the Swatch Table and click **Add**.

You can select multiple colors using SHIFT and CTRL keys.

3. To delete a color from the Swatch Table, select the color on the list and click **Delete**.

Color Specs - Find Tab

In the Color Specs - Find Tab dialog box you can find a color in the color libraries that matches the color that you are using in your design.

- 1. Select the color that you want to search from the list on the left side of the screen.
 - You can also use your measuring device to measure one specific color. To measure a color, click the **Measure** button.

Select the Vendors and the Types from the list. Click at (□), located on the left side of the name to select it. Clicking on (¹) expands the list and show all the Types for the vendor.



- You can select multiple **Vendor** and **Type**.
- 3. Select the tolerance for the search from the list.
- 4. Click Search.
 - The closest matches for the selected color are displayed on the bottom of the screen. When you select a color from the list, While adjusting the colors, the swatch will show the color you are looking for on the top, and the color found in the Color Library on the bottom.



- 5. Select the color from the list.
- Click Replace to replace the color selected on step (2) with the new color found in the Color Library. Click Add to add the new color in the Swatch Table.

Creating Color Swatch Tables

range of black values.

The software has the ability to automatically create the following types of swatch tables:

 Duotone
 This swatch table shows all of the duotone colors that can be created using the spot colors in your current palette.

 CMYK
 This swatch table shows all of the CMY color

combinations currently available, plus the

And the second s



CurrentThis swatch table is a listing of all the colorsPalettein your current palette.

0414		
Salety Green	Safety Red	Gold 1
Violet	Balaty Crange	Salaty Blue
Underbase	Nichight Blue	Refective
Purple	Magnetia	Futnis
Bian	Light Violet	Pale Pink
Sky Blue	Cray Blue	Dark Blue
Light Cyan	Teel	Oyan
Hedum Green	Green	Marris Greet
Yellow	Lime Green	Pale Green
Rust Onungo	Northe Yolkov	Globel Control
Seimon Pink	Burgundy	Red
Black	Onay	White

To create a swatch table:

- 1. From the View menu, select Create Swatch, then either Duotone, CMYK or Current Palette.
- 2. Adjust the following settings in DesignCentral:



The size of each swatch.

The amount of space taken up by the labels above and to the left of the swatch table.



The horizontal spacing between swatches.



- The vertical spacing between swatches.
- •••• The number of swatches or sets of swatches per row.
- 3. Click Advanced to set advanced settings.
- 4. Click Apply. 🗹

The swatch table will appear in the lower left corner of the page.

Advanced Settings for Duotone Swatch Tables



On the **Color** tab, toggle the **S** icon to the left of the spot color listings to determine whether the color will show up in the swatch table. You can exclude colors from either the set of top colors, or the set of base colors.



The color will appear in the swatch table.



The color will not appear in the swatch table.

On the Label tab, select the font that will be used for the labels.



Advanced Settings for CMYK Swatch Tables

		×
cmyk Label		
Step:	10 - 2	
Start:	0 * %	
End:	100 🔹 %	
	OK Cancel	1

On the cmyk tab, enter the following settings:

Step The change in ink values between one swatch and the next.

Start The lower boundary of the range of color values in the swatch table.

End The upper boundary of the range of color values in the swatch table. On the **Label** tab, select the font that will be used for the labels.

Advanced Settings for Current Palette Swatch Tables



On the **Color** tab, toggle the **S** icon to the left of the spot color listings to determine whether the color will show up in the swatch table.



The color will appear in the swatch table.



The color will not appear in the swatch table.

On the Label tab, select the font that will be used for the labels.



9. Using Fill/Stroke Editor

Fill/Stroke Editor shows information about how an object is filled and its stroke.

Displaying Fill/Stroke Editor

The Fill/Stroke Editor consists of two screens: the **Fill Tab** and **Stroke Tab**.

To view the Fill/Stroke Editor, from the **View** menu, select **Fill/Stroke Editor**.





Fill/Stroke Editor – Stroke Tab

Types of Fills

Vector objects can have the following types of fill:

No Fill The object has no fill.

Solid Fill The object is filled with one solid color.

Pattern Fill The object is filled with multiple copies of a pattern.

Gradient Fill The object is filled with a gradient, which is a combination of two or more colors so that one color blends smoothly with the next one in increments.

For more information about how to set the object's fill, see "Working with Color" on page 77.



Applying No Fill to an Object

To apply the **No Fill** fill type to an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. In the Fill/Stroke Editor, select **No Fill**, or click on the Swatch in the color palette.

Applying a Solid Fill to an Object

To apply a solid fill to an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. In the Fill/Stroke Editor, select Solid Fill.

	- ×
1	
Solid fill	•
Red	
☑ Wireframe	
Advanced	

- 3. Select the color of the fill from the list.
- 4. If desired, check **Wireframe** to make the object show up as an outline drawn in the color of the fill. This setting will override the outline settings for the object.



Solid Fill with Wireframe enabled.

 Click Advanced to edit the fill color using the Color Specs dialog. For more information about the Color Spec dialog, see "Using Color Specs" on page 85.

You can also apply a solid fill by selecting the object and clicking on a solid colored swatch in the color palette.

Applying a Pattern Fill to an Object

To apply a pattern fill to an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. In the Fill/Stroke Editor, select Pattern Fill.



3. Select the pattern to be used from the **I** list.

4. Select the background color from the

Using Pattern Fill Advanced Settings

When the **Advanced** button is clicked in Fill/Stroke Editor – Fill Tab for Pattern Fill, the Advanced Settings dialog will be displayed.

		×
Pattern name:	Stars	Preview
Tile size		histolate
↔ 0.833in 🕂	- Spacing	hininininini
1.000in 🕂	↔ 0.000in ÷	
Proportional	1 0.000in 🗧	
- Shift	- First tile offset	
Row C Column	X: 0.000in 🚍	histolala
Offset: 0.0%	Y: 0.000in 🖶	-
	Add to swatch table	
Restore Defaults	Transform with object	x•x•x•x•x•x•x
		OK Cancel

The following parameters of the pattern can be adjusted in this dialog.





Transform with Object	When this option is checked, each pattern tile will be proportionally resized when the object is resized.
Restore Defaults	Restores the default settings for selected pattern.

Click OK to save your changes.

Applying a Gradient Fill to an Object

To apply a gradient fill to an object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. In the Fill/Stroke Editor, select Gradient Fill.



- If desired, you can select one of the stock gradients from the list.
- 4. To make your own gradient, or edit one of the stock gradients:
 - a. Select the type of gradient applied to the object from the list. The following types are available:



Linear Gradient Radial Gradient Conical Gradient Square Gradient

Select the gradient color mode from the slist. The following modes are available:

•	RGB	The colors in the gradient will all be defined using the RGB color model.
-	СМҮК	The colors in the gradient will all be defined using the CMYK color model.
•	Single spot color	The gradient will blend between two or more shades of a single spot color.
2,	Double spot colors	The gradient will use two spot colors. This type of gradient is defined solely by its end points: it has no intermediate points in the middle.

- c. Click relation to edit the gradient using the Edit Line. See "Editing Gradients Using the Edit Line" on page 96 for details.
- d. Adjust the angle of the gradient in the **\$** field.

Advanced Options for Gradient Fill

When the **Advanced** button is clicked in Fill/Stroke Editor – Fill Tab for Gradient Fill, the Advanced Settings dialog will be displayed.

Gradient name:	Gradient77	🗖 Add to swal	tch table
		🔽 Transform v	vith object
	♦ -3.180* 🛨		-
•••			
🔲 Use HSV trans	ition		
]		Shade: 0.1)% [*
		Position: 0.1]% [*
	allen distant		

The following parameters of the gradient can be adjusted in this dialog.





Editing Gradients Using the Edit Bar

In the Fill/Stroke Editor – Fill Tab and Advanced Settings dialog, you can adjust the gradient using the Edit Bar.



- Click any color icon in the Edit Bar to select it. In Advanced Settings dialog, you can change the color using the swatch on right side of the dialog.
- In the Fill/Stroke Editor Fill Tab, you can change or create a new color in the gradient, dragging the new color from the swatch table to an existing color or in a blank space between colors.
- Click and drag the color icon to the left / right to change its position in the gradient. In Advanced Settings dialog, you can change the position using the position field on right side of the dialog.
- The Start and End Color icons cannot be dragged.
- Click and drag the color icon above the gradient bar to delete it.
- **CTRL** and dragging the color icon creates a copy of the dragged color.
- Click a blank space between color icons to create a new color in the gradient.

Editing Gradients Using the Edit Line

When you click the **Edit Gradient** button in Fill/Stroke Editor – Fill Tab, a Gradient Editing Line will be displayed in the object where the gradient is applied.

The Gradient Editing Line can be placed outside the object.



 You can change or create a new color in the gradient, dragging the new color from the swatch table to an existing color or in a blank space between colors.

- Click and drag the intermediate color icon to the left / right to change its position in the gradient.
- Click and drag the start /end color icon to change the gradient size and the gradient angle.
- **CTRL** and dragging the color icon creates a copy of the dragged color.

Editing Stroke Properties of an Object

Fill/Stroke Editor – Stroke Tab displays the following vector object's stroke properties.


ProDeSIGN

10.Working With Shapes

Shapes are closed objects such as the rectangles, starbursts and polygons. You can create a shape freehand or by specifying the size.

The following standard shapes are available in your software:



Creating Shapes

All of the shapes may be drawn freehand:

- 1. Select the desired shape tool.
- 2. Click and drag the cursor in the design area.



The rectangle and the arrow are only for illustrative purposes and are not actually displayed while you create a shape.

- For some shapes, holding the **SHIFT** and **CTRL** keys during dragging affects the shape creation. For more details see the description below about each shape.
- 3. Release the mouse button.
- 4. Adjust the shape's properties from DesignCentral.
- 5. If you want to add another shape with the same size, click again in the design area.



Holding SHIFT or CTRL While Creating Rectangles and Ovals

- Hold the **SHIFT** key down while dragging to constrain the rectangle or oval to a square or circle.
- Hold the **CTRL** key down while dragging to draw a rectangle or oval from its center.





Holding SHIFT or CTRL While Creating Polygons

- Hold the SHIFT key down to create an irregular polygon within a rectangle determined by the dragging position.
- Hold the CTRL key down to create a regular polygon with a horizontal base.





Dragging while holding the CTRL key

Holding SHIFT or CTRL While Creating Starbursts

- Hold the SHIFT key down to create an irregular starburst within a rectangle determined by the dragging position.
- Hold the CTRL key down to constrain the starburst to a vertical position.



Holding SHIFT or CTRL While Creating Fans and Arrows

- Hold the SHIFT key down to constrain the fan or arrow angle to certain values. The constrain angles can be set using the Preferences. See "Preferences - General Tab" on page 21 for more information.
- Hold the CTRL key down to create a fan or arrow from its center.

Holding CTRL While Creating Advanced Borders and Parametric Shapes

Hold the **CTRL** key down while dragging to draw a shape from its center.

Editing Shapes Using DesignCentral

You can edit a shape using DesignCentral. The parameters in DesignCentral can be adjusted before, during or after the shape is created.

For more details about how to resize, rotate, or mirror a shape, see "Arranging Objects" on page 57.

For each shape you have different parameters that can be adjusted in DesignCentral.

Rectangle

For rectangles, you can adjust the Height, Width, Corner type (Regular, Rounded, Inverted or Clipped), Corner radius and Inner Border Width.

The Corner radius is only available when the **Rounded**, **Inverted** or **Clipped** type is selected.



Circles

For Circles, you have the following modes, and for each of them you have different parameters that you can adjust:



Center Radius You can adjust the X. Y coordinates of the center and the radius that determine the circle's shape.

Two Point You can adjust X, Y coordinates of the two points that determine the circle's shape.

> You can adjust X, Y coordinates of the three points that determine the circle's shape.



Three Point



0		
Th	ree Point	-
\oslash		
X1	45.000cm	÷
Y1	35.000cm	÷
X2	60.000cm	÷
Y2	25.000cm	÷
XЗ	57.500cm	÷
Y3	37.500cm	÷

DesignCentral for Circle

Ovals

For Ovals, you can adjust the Height and Width.

Polygons

For Polygons, you can adjust the Height, Width and the number of sides.

Starburst

For Starbursts, you can adjust the Inner and Outer radius, the number of spikes and spike twist angle.







Starbursts

Fan

For Fan shape, you can adjust the Outer radius, Thickness, Rotation angle and the Sweep angle.

Arrow

For Arrows, you can adjust the Arrow Length, Angle, Tail Length and Width, Cap Length and Wing angle.

Registration Marks

For Registration Marks, you can adjust the Size, and the registration mark type (Diamond or Round).



DesignCentral for Fan

DesignCentral for Arrow

DesignCentral for Registration Mark

 $\mathbf{\mathbf{O}}$

- ×

+

Advanced Borders

For Advanced Borders, you can adjust the Border Type, Height or Width, and Inner Border Width.

Click the button on left hand side of the Add button to show a list with all available border types. Click the Proportional check box to keep the border width and height ratio constant.





DesignCentral for Advanced Border

You can create your own borders and then add them to the border list:

- 1. Create the border and save the file.
- Select Advanced Border tool. 2
- 3. Click Add button on DesignCentral.

4. Select the file saved in step (1) and click **Open**.

The border is added to the list. To delete a border from the list, delete the file from "Border" folder.



Border List with a new custom border

Parametric Shapes

You can adjust the Height or Width, and several parameters for parametric shapes.

Click the **Edit** button to show a dialog box where you can edit all parameters.



ihape:	Parameters:
H: 2.540cm 4 L: 5.080cm 4 A: 45.0* 4 R: 0.000cm 4	Preview:

DesignCentral for Parametric Shape

Parameter editing dialog box



Editing Shapes Using Control Points

You can create visually complex objects by using Control Points and Bezier handles.

Rectangle

For rectangles, you can drag the following control points.



Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging the Height or Width control points to resize proportionally.

Circle

Depending on which method you are using, you can drag the following control points while creating a circle:

- Center and the Radius
- First and second points
- First, second and third points



Creating a circle using the 3 point method



Creating a circle using Center and Radius method

Oval

For ovals, you can drag the following control points.



Holding down the **SHIFT** key while dragging the Height or Width control points will make the resizing proportional.

Polygon

For polygons, you can drag the following control points and handles:



- Hold the CTRL key while dragging the Size control point to keep the polygon's position.
- Hold the **CTRL** key while dragging the Bend control point to restore the polygon to its original shape.
- Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging the Bend handle to move the opposite handle in the same direction.
- Hold the CTRL key while dragging the Bend handle to keep the opposite handle stationary.

Starburst

You can drag the following points on a Starburst:



The Size and the Bend control points behave the same way as explained for the polygon in previous item.

Fan

You can drag the following points on a Fan shape:



Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging the Sweep Angle or Rotate control points to constrain the angle.



Arrow

You can drag the following points on an Arrow shape:



Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging the Rotate control point to constrain the angle.

Advanced Border

You can drag the following points on an Advanced Border:



Converting Objects to Shapes

The Convert To Shape command is used to convert objects to shapes. You can quickly convert the traced artwork to the desired shape, then edit the shape.



Converting into Rectangles

To convert an object into a shape:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Convert to Shape** and then select the new shape.



11.Working with Text

The software allows you to create text and change its appearance. The following defines each text type and displays and example:



Vertical Text: The text follows a straight vertical line.

Vertical Path Text: The vertical text is placed over a path. **GC HD B Vertical Block Text**: The vertical text is the height of a block. When the text is higher then

the block, it will automatically move to the next line.

Creating New Text

You create text by using the tools located on the Text toolbar.

Creating Horizontal/Vertical Text

- 1. Select Horizontal Text or Vertical Text tool.
- 2. Click anywhere in the design area.
- 3. Type the text.

Lorem ipsum dolor

4. If desired, hit **ENTER** to move to the next line.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur

5. Hit ESC or select a different tool to finish entering text.

Creating Horizontal/Vertical Block Text

- 1. Select Horizontal Text or Vertical Text tool.
- 2. Click and drag to create a block where the text will be confined.



 Type the text. The text will automatically wrap when it reaches the opposite end of the text block. The text block will expand to accommodate additional lines of text.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur

- 4. If desired, hit ENTER to move to the next line.
- 5. Hit **ESC** or select a different tool to finish entering text.

Creating Horizontal/Vertical Path Text

- 1. Select Horizontal Path Text or Vertical Path Text tool. 🙆 🐣
- 2. Click on any existing path or shape in your design.



3. Type the text.

ipsum dolor,

4. Hit **ESC** or select a different tool to finish entering text.

Creating Arc Text

- 1. Select Arc Text tool.
- 2. Click and drag to define the radius and center of the circle the text will be positioned around. The cursor will be placed at the point on the circumference that you clicked on when creating the circle.



Click and drag

 Hold down the CTRL key while dragging to draw the circle from the center point. The cursor will be placed at the point on the circumference that you clicked on when creating the circle.



- Holding down the SHIFT key while dragging restricts the Starting Angle to increments determined in Preferences (see "Preferences - General Tab" on page 21 for more details).
- 3. Type the text.
- 4. If desired, hit ENTER to move to the next line.



5. Hit **ESC** or select a different tool to finish entering text.



Changing Text Attributes Using DesignCentral

While or after creating text, you can adjust the text properties in DesignCentral.

In DesignCentral you can have two or more Tabs for each type of text.



DesignCentral for Horizontal Text



DesignCentral for Horizontal Block Text



DesignCentral for Horizontal Path Text



DesignCentral for Arc Text



DesignCentral for Vertical Text



DesignCentral for Vertical Block Text



DesignCentral for Vertical Path Text

Editing Attributes in DesignCentral

Some attributes in DesignCentral are common for all types of text, others are specific for one type.

The following attributes are available on the DesignCentral - Character Tab.







ରି 6.000⊳m 📑 Vertical Text Amount of spacing between lines of text

Click the button on the right side of this field to select between **Automatic** and **Specify**. When **Specify** is selected, the Line Spacing field is enabled, and you can specify the amount of space between lines.

This field is not available for Horizontal and Vertical Path Text.

The following attributes are available in DesignCentral - Paragraph Tab:





where the horizontal text will be restricted.



This field allows you to specify the height of the block where the vertical text will be restricted.

E 0.000cm E Horizontal Text This field allows you to specify the indent for the first line of the block text.

Horizontal Text

Vertical Text

The following attribute is available for horizontal and vertical path text only.



Click this button to move the text to the opposite side of the path.

The following attributes are available on the DesignCentral - Arc Tab and are available for Arc text only:

	×
\$⇔ ∩ A ≣ ⊉	
L	Arc Tab
11.573cm 🗄	Defines the radius of the circle where the text will be placed.
🔺 🧕 90.0° 📃	Starting position of the text in the arc.
	This starting angle is related to the Alignment position. For example, if you want the center of the text to be placed in the top of the circle, select Align Center and enter a value of 90 degrees in this field.
<u>ab</u> 🤼 🔂	Position of the first line of the text on the arc.
ab ab	Starting position of the first line of the arc text. The top and bottom are determined by the value in Starting Angle. If you created your circle by dragging, the top is the point where you began to draw the circle.
8 8	Starting position of the second line of the arc text. After typing the first line of the text, press the ENTER key and the text will be placed in the next line (Multiple Line Style) or at the opposite side of the circle (Top / Bottom Style).

Changing Text Attributes Using Control Points

Most of the set DesignCentral properties may also be set manually. You can click and drag directly the Control Points on the text.

When you select text, and then display the Character or Paragraph tab of DesignCentral, the text displays with a number of Control Points around it. Each of these Control Points has a special meaning, and changes the text when moved.

You can use the arrow keys on your keyboard to make incremental



adjustments.

The following Control Points can be dragged in a text:



(1) Line Spacing

Click this point to select one line of text. When a line is selected you may change attributes such as color or font.

Drag this point to adjust the spacing between lines. All lines below the selected line are also repositioned. Typing **CTRL+up arrow** and **CTRL+down arrow** while the text cursor is displayed in the text also adjusts line spacing.

For text and block text, CTRL key while dragging moves only the

selected line. For path and arc text, it will restore the text to its initial position.

For arc text, **SHIFT** key while dragging adjusts the vertical offset of the select line. For all other types of text, **SHIFT** key while dragging moves the selected line left or right.

(2) Move Character

Click this point to select one individual character. After selecting one character, you can change its attributes.

Drag this point to adjust the spacing between the selected character and the previous one. All characters to the right of the selected character are also repositioned.

CTRL key while dragging, moves only the selected character and leaves the remaining text in place. **SHIFT** key while dragging moves the selected character up or down.

(3) Rotate Character

Drag this point, located in the upper right corner of each character, to rotate an individual character.

SHIFT key while dragging rotates the character in increments. See "Preferences - General Tab" on page 21 about how to set the increment angle. **CTRL** key while dragging restores the character to its default position.

(4) Tracking

Drag this point to adjust the tracking of the selected text. The tracking is adjusted equally for all characters and between all words.

CTRL key while dragging, changes tracking between words.

(5) Line Spacing

Drag this point to produce equal spacing between lines.

(6) Block Size

Drag this point to restrict the text box width. This option is only available for Block text.

(7) Center

Drag this point to adjust the position of the circle. **SHIFT** key while dragging limits the circle's position to specific positions.



When the Arc Tab is selected, you will see an extra set of control points that can be dragged:

(a) Center

Drag this point to adjust the position of the center of the circle and also to change its radius.



(b) Inner Radius

Drag this point to change the radius of the circle while keeping the center and **top** positions unchanged. This causes a distortion of the text.

CTRL key while dragging will not distort the text.

(c) Outer Radius

Drag this point to change the radius of the circle while keeping the center and **bottom** positions unchanged. This causes a distortion of the text.

CTRL key while dragging will not distort the text.

(d) Rotate

Drag this point to change the position of the arc text on the circle.

SHIFT key while dragging constrains the position. See "Preferences - General Tab" on page 21 about how to set the constrain angles.

(e) Sweep Angle

Drag this point to change the sweep angle of the arc text on the circle. It changes each character width and the spacing between them.

SHIFT key while dragging constrains the sweep angle. See "Preferences - General Tab" on page 21 about how to set the constrain angle.

CTRL key while dragging, both sides of the text moves at equal rate from the center point.

Editing Text

In an existing text, you can enter a new text or replace existing words

- 1. Select any of the text tools.
- 2. Click on the text you want to edit.
- 3. To insert characters into the text, place the cursor in the desired location and begin typing.

ABC DEF → ABdefC DEF GHI GHI

Use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move the cursor within the text.

The $\ensuremath{\text{HOME}}$ key returns the cursor to the beginning of the current line.

The **END** key moves the cursor to the end of a line.

4. To replace part of the text, select the text you want to replace and type or paste in the text you want to replace it with.



- SHIFT and left arrow / right arrow keys selects a group of characters.
- **SHIFT** and up arrow / down arrow keys selects the character from the beginning of a line to the insertion point, or from the insertion point to the end of the line.
- Click and drag to select a group of characters.
- Double clicking selects one word.

Selecting Text

You can select text as whole text, one line at a time or a group of characters.

Selecting the Whole Text

• Select the text with **Select** tool.

Selecting One or More Characters

• Click and drag the text with **Text** tool to select a group of characters.

Selecting One Character

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Select the Character or Paragraph Tab in DesignCentral.
- 3. Click the **Move Character** control point.

Selecting One Line

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Select the Character or Paragraph Tab in DesignCentral.
- 3. Click the Line Spacing control point.

The baseline changes to the layer color (default is red).



All text selected





Second line selected



Multiple characters selected

Changing Text Attributes

All fonts in your system are available for selection. In addition, special fonts installed into your software folder are available. These fonts include URW, Casfonts and FSfonts.

To change the font in existing text:

- 1. Select the text.
- From the Text menu, point to Font and then select the desired font type from the menu. If the desired font is not visible in the menu, click More at the top of the menu.

To change the font and other attributes using DesignCentral:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Click the Character Tab in DesignCentral.
- 3. Change the attribute.

While you scroll the font list, you will see a preview using the font that is highlighted.

Before the font name, an icon indicates the font type:

- TrueType Fonts
 F Casfonts
 F
- Adobe Type 1 Fonts URW Fonts URW Fonts
- FF FSfonts

Changing Default Text Settings

All new text created uses the default font setting. To change the default font setting:

- 1. Make sure no text is selected.
- 2. Select the **Text** tool.
- 3. Choose the default settings from Text menu or in DesignCentral.

Finding and Replacing

Your software includes a standard dialog box for locating and replacing text.

To find and replace text:

- 1. From the Text menu, select Find/Replace.
- 2. Enter the text that you want to find in the field.
 - Click Format button to specify a format to search. The Find Format Setting dialog box allows you to locate text by font, style, or size.
 - To find a set of characters that may be part of a longer word, turn off **Match whole word only**.
 - To search within a specific part of the text, select the text and choose **Selection only** option.
 - To distinguish between uppercase and lowercase characters, select the **Match case** check box.
- 3. If necessary, enter the replacement text. You can specify the format of the replacement text by clicking the **Format** button.
- 4. Once the text is found you can:
 - Click Find Next to locate the next occurrence of the text.
 - Click Replace to replace the text.

Click **Replace All** to replaces all occurrences of the specified text.

Spell Checking

Your software provides a spell checking tool in several languages to check your work.

- 1. From the Text menu, select Check Spelling.
- From the Language list, select the language.
- To spell check within a specific part of the text, select the text and then choose **Selection only** option.
- Choose the **Case Sensitive** option to distinguish between upper and lower case.
- 2. Select the misspelled word from the **Misspelled words** list, and then:
- Select the correct word from the **Suggested corrections** list or enter the correct word in the **Change to** field and then click **Change** or **Change All**.
- Click Ignore or Ignore All to ignore the misspelled word.
- Click **Add** to add the misspelled word to the custom dictionary. Click **Edit List** to edit your custom dictionary.
- 3. Click **Done** to end spell checking.

Changing Case

To alter the case of text:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Case** and then select the desired capitalization from the menu. The following options are available:

UPPER CASE	All text is changed to capital letters.
lower case	All text is changed to lower case letters.
Sentence case	The first character of each sentence is changed to capital and the rest lower case.
Title Case	The first character of each word is changed to capital and the rest lower case.
tOGGLE cASE	Changes the lower case letters to capitals and vice versa.

Changing Kerning

Kerning is the space between characters of text. Kerning varies from font to font, and each font contains specific kerning information.

Using Automatic Kerning

Your software contains several kerning setting options.

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Kerning** and then select the desired kerning setting.



Using Manual Kerning

Sometimes you only need to adjust the kerning between a single set of characters.

To change the kerning of all text:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. Change the value of the **Tracking** field on the DesignCentral Character Tab.

To change the kerning between two characters:

- 1. Click the **Text** tool between two characters.
- 2. Adjust the kerning by changing the value of the **Tracking** field on DesignCentral Character Tab.

CTRL and right arrow / left arrow keys narrows or widens the kerning.

Defining Kerning

Instead of setting the kerning each time you create a design, you can change the default kerning for a pair of characters for one font. By setting up a table of kerning pairs for your frequently used fonts, you can ensure that they will look right every time you use them.

The kerning specified here is used only by this program and will not affect or be used by other applications.

To define kerning for a specific set of characters:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, select **Default Kerning**.
- 3. Select where the kerning will be stored.

Selection only	Kerning is used only for selected text.
In document	Kerning is used for all text that is using this font and pair of characters for this file.



As default

Kerning is used in all files.

In Define Kerning dialog box, you can type a new pair of characters.

- 4. Drag the character in **Define Kerning** dialog box or enter a value in **Kerning** field.
- The kerning is defined in Em units. An Em space is equal to the width of "M" in the selected font.
- 5. Click OK.

Breaking and Joining Text

You can break text with multiple lines in individual lines of text, and also join several lines of text.



To break text:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Break Apart.
- When a single line is selected, the text is separated into individual characters.

To join several lines:

- 1. Select the text blocks you would like to join.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Join Together.

Changing Text Orientation

Changes vertical text to horizontal and vice-versa:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Text Orientation** and then select **Horizontal** or **Vertical** from the menu.



Adjusting Text Block Size

To specify the text height and width:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Text Spacing.
- 3. Enter the desired text Width and Height.
 - When Adjust word spacing only is checked, only the spaces between words are increased or decreased. If there are no spaces in the text, the width will remain unchanged.
 - When **Proportional** is checked, changing a value automatically changes the other one, keeping the size proportional.
- Text must have more than one line in order to change the text height.

Working With Braille Text

You can convert normal text into Braille Grade 1 or Braille Grade 2. Grade 1 is in full spelling and consists of the letters of the alphabet, punctuation, numbers, and a number of composition signs that are special to Braille. Duxbury Systems conversion is used for Grade 2 support that gives the highest quality Braille available. Braille can be spell checked, and even converted back to normal text to be edited. There is an option to omit the caps indicator and keep Braille in all lowercase that makes for more concise Braille. Dot Size can be specified to make Braille Photo-Polymer compatible.

Converting Text to Braille

1. Select the text.

- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Braille** and then select **Grade 1** or **Grade 2** from the menu.
- Once converted to Braille, the text can not be resized. Arc and Path text can not be converted to Braille.

Converting Braille to Text

- 1. Select the **Braille** text.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Braille then Braille to Text.



Braille Tab in DesignCentral

When Braille text is selected, DesignCentral displays the Braille Tab with the following attributes and commands:

Grade 1 / Grade 2	Changes the Braille coding.
Lowercase Only	Check to remove caps indicators.
Show Empty Dots	Check to show all the empty dots in your text when it is selected. Empty dots are not output.
CA Standard	Check to force the Braille coding to comply with the California Braille standard.
Θ	The diameter of each dot.
Edit	Click this button to edit the original text.
Convert to Text	Click this button to convert Braille text back to normal text

Working With Barcodes

You can convert normal text into Barcodes using Code 39 or Extended Code 39.

Code 39 is an alphanumeric bar code. It can encode numbers 0-9, the uppercase alphabet A-Z, Space, and the some symbols (- . * / % +). If you need lowercase letters, there is also an Extended Code 39 that encodes the 128 character ASCII character set by pairing existing Code 39 characters.

Converting Text to Barcode

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Barcode** and then select **Barcode39** or **Barcode39 Extended** from the menu.

Ð Once converted to Barcode, the text can not be resized or edited. Arc and Path text can not be converted to Barcode.

Converting Barcode to Text

- 1. Select the Barcode.
- 2 From the Text menu, select Barcode to Text.



Barcode Tab in DesignCentral

When a Barcode is selected, DesignCentral displays the **Barcode** Tab and the **Barcode Text** Tab with the following attributes and commands:





ካ r Arial	•
Regular	-

Font and Style used in title.

Click this button to edit the original text.

Convert to Text

Edit

Convert the Barcode back to text.

Working With Special Characters

Sometimes you may need to insert a special symbol into your text.

Using Existing Fonts

If you have a font that contains a special character, you can use the following method to insert a special character:

- 1. Click the text with **Text** tool, placing the cursor where the special character will be inserted.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Insert Symbols.
- Select the font and click the special character that will be inserted Click Enter to change lines and Space to enter a space.

4. Click OK.

	-1 -1 -1	-1-1-1-	2-1-2-1	1-1-1	1.42.41.42	-1-1-1	-1-1-1	-1-1	-2-1-2	1 - 1 - 1	1.1.1.1.1	2 • 2 • 2 • 3	2 • 1 • 2 • 1	-1-1-1	12-12-12	
T /	Arial						<u>-</u>]								
																-
														s		
	1	5	#	\$	%	_	15	()	*	+		1.5		1	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	2	4	<	1	>	?	
@	Α	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	T	J	K	L	M	Ν	0	
Ρ	Q	R	S	Т	U	V	W	Х	Y	Ζ	[1	1	٨	-	1
· · ·	а	b	С	d	е	f	g	h	1	j	k	1	m	n	0	1
р	q	r	S	t	u	V	W	х	У	Z	{	1	}	~		1
€		2	ſ			+	‡	^	%。	Š	<	Œ		Ž		-
	Spac	e		Ent	er										OK	



Creating New Characters

You can convert paths and shapes into a new special character:

- 1. Select the path.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Define Character.
- 3. Select the font type and style where the new character will be added in **DesignCentral**.
- 4. Select the new character or character code in Character.
- 5. To size and position the character properly, specify a reference character in **Reference Character**.

The baseline and the box of the new character will be placed relative to the bounding box in the same ratio as the reference character. When the reference character is not specified, the baseline is on the bottom of the object bounding box, and the character is scaled to fit the ascent.

You can also click and drag the control points around the character to adjust the new character's position and size.





F	
ካ r Arial	•
Regular	-
Character Character:	C
C Hex code:	43
Reference Ch	aracter —
Character:	
C Hex code:	0
Delete	×

In this example, the new character will be defined as "C" in Arial Regular font

Bounding box and Control Points

6. Click Apply.

In the example below, the character "C" in Arial font is replaced with a telephone symbol. Every time you type "C" using the Arial font, a telephone symbol will be used.



The special character specified here is used only by this program and will not affect or be used by other applications. Also the existing text in your document will not be affected.

To delete a custom character:

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the Text menu, select Define Character.
- 3. Select the font type and style where the character was added.
- 4. Select the character or character code in Character.
- 5. Click Delete.

Working With Text Styles

You can copy text attributes and apply them to other text within your document. You may also store text styles within a list. The text style contains the following attributes:

- Font
 Kerning
- Word Spacing
- Line
 Orientation

- Style Size
- Tracking
- Line Spacing

- Direction
 Width
- Vertical
 Eading
 Offset
- Character
 Slant
 Justification

Copying and Pasting Text Styles

- 1. Select the text with the desired attributes.
- 2. From the Text menu, point to Text Style and then select Copy Style.
- 3. Select the text where the style will be applied.
- 4. From the Text menu, point to **Text Style** and then select **Paste Style**.



Storing Styles in the Style List

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Text Style** and then select **Store Style**.
- 3. Type the style name.
- 4. Click OK.

Applying Styles from the Style List

- 1. Select the text.
- 2. From the **Text** menu, point to **Text Style** and then select **Apply Style**.
- 3. Select the style from the list.
- 4. Click OK.

Text Preferences

To change the text preferences:

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. Select Tools Tab.
- 3. Select **Text** tool from the list on left side of dialog box.

In Text Preferences, the following options are available:

- Font Size Your software bases the font height on a specific letter, measuring from the top of the letter to its baseline. By default, sizes are based on the height of the letter "X". The benefit of using a reference letter is knowing the exact size of one particular letter.
- Using a reference letter does not make all characters the same size as that letter.

You can also use default font sizes. This information is included in the description of each font. To use default font sizes, select the **Use font height** option.

In the example below text was selected and the same size was set in DesignCentral.



[A] The height of letter "X" was set as a reference in **Based on height of**. The height of letter "X" is exactly the size specified in DesignCentral because it is used as a reference. All other letters, like the "a" in the above example, will be proportionally resized.

[B] The height of letter "a" was set as a reference in **Based on height of**. The height of letter "a" is exactly the size specified in DesignCentral and all other letters, like the "X" is proportionally resized.

[C] Setting **Use font height** in Font size in Preferences. The height of the font's original bounding box has the size specified in DesignCentral.

- Width/tracking/word spacing You can choose to show this value in DesignCentral in actual size or as a percentage.
- Smooth edges of screen fonts If you want your text to appear with smoother edges on the screen, check this option.



While **Smooth edges of screen fonts** option does make the characters appear smoother, it creates a discrepancy between the displayed size and the actual size of the characters.

Some characters show a red border when selected. This red border is the actual line that will be outputted.

Working with Fonts

Installing Fonts

In your software you can use TrueType, Adobe Type 1, FSfont, Casfonts and URW fonts.

Installing TrueType Fonts

To install TrueType fonts, copy the font files into the operating system's **Fonts** directory. Consult your operating system documentation for details.

Installing Adobe Type 1 Fonts

Under Windows 2000, XP and later operating systems, Adobe Type 1 support is built into the operating system. Consult your operating system documentation for details.

Under previous versions of Windows, you must install Adobe Type Manager[®] in order to use Adobe Type 1 fonts. Consult the Adobe documentation for details.

Installing FSfonts

To install FSfonts:

- 1. Copy the font files to **FSFonts** folder.
- 2. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 3. Select Font Tab.
- 4. Enter the path or click **Browse** to select the folder where the fonts are stored.
- 5. If the fonts are protected, click Add and type the password.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Restart the software.

Installing URW and Casfonts

To install URW and Casfonts:

- 1. Copy the font files to **URWFonts** or **Casfonts** folder.
- 2. Restart the software.

Casmate Engraving Fonts

Casmate engraving fonts install in the same manner as other Casmate fonts, with the following additional conditions:

- If the filename of the font starts in **ENG_**, **E_** or **E** (E followed by a space), the font is automatically loaded as an open path font.
- Fonts whose filenames begin with some other characters must be listed in a text file named **casfopen.lst** in the **Casfonts** folder. Once the filename is listed in the **casfopen.lst** file, the software will automatically load the font as an open path font.

The format of the casfopen.lst file is as follows:

- The first line consists of the section header [CAS Fonts].
- All other lines are font entries. Each font entry is on its own line. A font entry consists of the name of the font, exactly as it appears in Inspire or CASmate, followed by an equal sign (=). Font entries are case-sensitive.

The following is an example of a **casfopen.lst** file:


```
[CAS Fonts]
Eng_Tulip41=
Eng_Glacis41=
Eng_Palm=
Eng_Script=
E Iris
E Iris LZR=
E Normal Block 1 Line=
E Roman Double Line=
E Cursive 1 Line=
E DOUBLE LINE CONNECTING SCRIPT=
E 4 LINE HELVETICA=
E HELVETICA REGULAR 1983=
```

Modifying the Fonts in Use

The software allows you to determine which of the fonts on your system will be loaded when the software starts up.

To modify the selection of fonts the software will load, from the **Text** menu, select **Font** then **Modify**.

		×
Removed fonts		Selected fonts
	Add > < Remove Add All > < Remove All	Ph Allegro BT A Th AmerType Md BT The Arial Th Arial Black The Arial CE Th Arial Black The Arial CE The Arial Greek The Arial Greek The Arial I Narrow The Arial Narrow The Arial TUR AvantGarde Bt BT The AvantGarde Md BT Fr. Avanti 1 Fr. Avanti 1 Fr. Baha 1 The BankGothic Md BT The BankGothic Md BT
l	orem ips	su
Edit Sample	Apply	OK Cancel

A piece of sample text in the selected font is displayed at the bottom of the dialog.

To unload a font select it in the Selected Fonts list and click Remove.

To load a font select it in the **Removed Fonts** list and click Add.

To unload all fonts, click Remove All.

To add all fonts, click Add All.

To apply the selected font to the current text object, click **Apply**. The dialog will close and the font will be applied.

12.Working with Paths

A path consists of one or more straight or curved segments and can be **Open** or **Closed**. When you have more than one segment in one path, the segments are separated by a **Control Point**. The position of the Control Point determines the shape of the adjacent segments.

On curved segments, each anchor point displays **Direction Lines**, ending in **Direction Handles**. Their angle and the size determine the shape of the curve.

A Control Point located between two segments can be:

- **Symmetric** The direction handles point in opposite directions along the same line and they have the same size.
- **Smooth** The direction handles point in opposite directions along the same line but are not the same size.

Cusp The direction handles are not in the same line.







Symmetric Control Points

Smooth Control Points

Cusp Control Points

A *double circle or square* indicates the **Starting Point** of the path. In an open path, the starting point can be at either end of the path. In a closed path, the starting point can be anywhere on the path.



A straight segment is selected



A curved segment is selected

Creating Paths

You can create paths using the **Bezier Path** tool or the **Freehand Path** tool.

To continue drawing an existing open path, select the **Bezier Path** or **Freehand Path** tool and click the cursor over either end of the path.

Drawing Straight Segments Using the Bezier Path Tool

- 1. Select the Bezier Path tool. 1
- 2. Click where the segment will begin in the drawing area.
- 3. Click where the segment will end.

Hold the **SHIFT** key to constrain the line angle.

- 4. Repeat step 3 to create additional straight lines.
 - Press the **BACKSPACE** key to delete the last segment.
 - Press the **ESC** key or click the **New Path** button in DesignCentral to create a new path.
 - To close the path, place the cursor close to the starting point and click when the cursor shows a small circle underneath or press the **Close Path** button in DesignCentral.



• Press the **DELETE** key to delete the entire path.

Drawing Curved Segments Using the Bezier Path Tool

- 1. Select the Bezier Path tool. 🙍
- 2. Click where the segment will begin in the drawing area.
- 3. Click and drag where the segment will end in the drawing area.

By default the new Control Point is **Symmetric**. Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging to make the new point **Smooth**, or **CTRL** to make it a **Cusp**.

- 4. After releasing the mouse button, you can still adjust the Direction Lines, by dragging the Direction Handles. Hold the SHIFT key to change one Direction Line length and angle, while keeping the other Direction Line *length* unchanged. Hold the CTRL key to change one Direction Line length and angle, while keeping the other Direction Line *length* and angle, while keeping the other Direction Line *length* and angle unchanged.
- 5. Repeat step 3 to create more segments.
 - Press the **BACKSPACE** key to delete the last segment.
 - Press the **ESC** key or click the **New Path** button in DesignCentral to create a new path.
 - To close the path, place the cursor close to the starting point and click when the cursor shows a small circle underneath or press the Close Path button in DesignCentral.
 - Press the **DELETE** key to delete the entire path.

Drawing Arcs Using the Bezier Path Tool

- 1. Select the Bezier Path tool.
- 2. Click where the arc will begin in the drawing area.
- Hold the CTRL key and click to mark the endpoint of the arc, then drag to describe the curvature of the arc. The curvature will increase or decrease so that the arc always intersects the cursor.



4. After releasing the mouse button, you can still adjust the Direction Lines, by dragging the Direction Handles. Hold the SHIFT key to change one Direction Line length and angle, while keeping the other Direction Line *length* unchanged. Hold the CTRL key to

change one Direction Line length and angle, while keeping the other Direction Line length and angle unchanged.

- 5. Repeat step 4 to create additional segments.
 - Press the **BACKSPACE** key to delete the last segment.
 - Press the ESC key or click the New Path button in DesignCentral to create a new path.
 - To close the path, place the cursor close to the starting point and click when the cursor shows a small circle underneath or press the **Close Path** button in DesignCentral.
 - Press the **DELETE** key to delete the entire path.

Drawing Segments Using the Freehand Drawing Tool

- 1. Select Freehand Drawing tool. 🧳
- 2. Adjust the **Tolerance** in DesignCentral. The higher the tolerance value, the smoother the path becomes.





Tolerance = 0 pixels

Tolerance = 10 pixels

Tolerance = 20 pixels

- 3. Click and drag to create the path. Hold the SHIFT key to create a straight line.
- 4 While still creating the path, if you press **CTRL** key and drag back and erase the path that you just created.





Drawing a Freehand Path

Erasing a Path

5. To close the path, place the cursor close to the starting point and click.

Converting Objects into Paths

Converts objects such as shapes and text into paths.

1. Select the objects.

2. From the Arrange menu, select Convert to Outlines.

If the objects have a stroke around it, the resulting path will keep the stroke.

When text is converted to paths, the resulting paths will be compounded. To edit those paths, you have to uncompound them first.

Converting Stroke to Paths

• From the Arrange menu, select Convert Stroke to Outlines.

Selecting Points and Segments

Selecting Segments

- 1. Choose Select Point tool. 🏠
- 2. Click a control point or a segment.

When a straight segment is selected, a filled square is displayed. When a curved segment is selected, the Direction Handles and Lines for the segment is displayed along with a filled circle.



Straight segment selected

Curved segment selected

When a control point is selected, it displays a square, when the previous segment is a straight segment and a circle when the previous segment is curved.

Press the **TAB** key to move to the next point.

3. Hold the **SHIFT** key and click other segments to select multiple segments or points.

Selecting Control Points by Enclosing

- 1. Choose Select Point tool. 🏠
- 2. Click and drag to create a rectangular bounding box.



Another way to select multiple control points is by using an inclined bounding box. This method is useful when the points to be selected are placed in a way that a rectangular bounding box can not select them.

To select points using an inclined bounding box:

- 1. Choose Select Point tool. 🎓
- 2. Hold the **CTRL** key and click and drag to define one edge of the bounding box.
- 3. Release the **CTRL** key and drag the cursor in a perpendicular direction to define the adjacent edge of the bounding box.
- 4. Release the mouse button.



Using DesignCentral to Edit Points and Segments

When a segment or point is selected, DesignCentral displays two tabs: The **Path** Tab and the **Point** Tab. The information on each tab differs if a point or a segment is selected.

DesignCentral When a Segment is Selected

When a segment is selected, the following information is available in DesignCentral



Attributes in Path Tab



Type of selected segment (line or curve). You can convert one type to another by clicking these buttons.



Length of selected segment. In a curve segment, this value is the length of a straight line joining the two ends of the segment as shown on above illustration.



Inclination of selected segment. In a curve segment, this value is the angle of a straight line joining the two ends of the segment as shown on above illustration.

Attributes in Point Tab





X, Y coordinates of the selection point (the point where the segment was clicked).

Length and angle of the Direction Handle marked with a square.

Length and angle of the Direction Handle marked with a circle.

DesignCentral When a Control Point is Selected

When a Control Point is selected, DesignCentral shows all information about the selected point. Depending on the type of the point, some of the information below may not available.







Path Tab

Point Tab

Attributes in Path Tab



Type of segment prior to the selected point. You can convert one type to another by clicking these buttons.

'n • Type of selected point. You can convert one type to another by clicking these buttons. But in order to convert a Cusp point to Symmetric or Smooth, the two adjacent segments to this point must be curved segments.

102.9°	
--------	--

Angle between two Direction Handles.

Attributes in Point Tab



X, Y coordinates of the selected point.

Length and angle of the Direction Handle marked with a square.

Length and angle of the Direction Handle marked with a circle.

Path Direction

Every path has an direction associated with it. This direction is used when cutting. To see the path's direction, see "Showing Path Direction" on page 16.

To change the direction of a path:

- 1. Select the path.
- 2. From **Arrange** menu, point to **Path Direction** and then select the new direction.

Automatic	The direction of inside paths (holes) in an object are clockwise and the outside paths are counterclockwise.
Reverse	Inverts the current direction.
Clockwise	All paths have the same clockwise direction.
Counter Clockwise	All paths have the same counter clockwise direction.

Editing Path

The Path Edit toolbar contains tools that allow you to edit paths.

Straightening Lines

This Straighten Point tool is used to straighten a section of a path. In some cases, when you trace an image, extra points are added to the traced path. Use this tool to eliminate these points.

- 1. Select the Straighten Points tool.
- 2. Place the cursor over the path.
- 3. Click the point where the straight line will begins.
- 4. Click the point where the straight line will end.
- 5. Drag the start and end points to adjust the position of the straight line.



6. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.





Aligning Points and Segments Horizontally or Vertically

Use the Align Horizontal or Align Vertical tools when you want to align several points along a horizontal or vertical line.

- 1. Select the points.
- 2. Select the Align Horizontal or Align Vertical tool. 🕰 🐴

The points and segments are aligned.



Selected points

Points aligned horizontally

Aligning Points and Segments to an Angle

The Align Points tool aligns selected points along an alignment reference line.

- 1. Select the points.
- 2. Select Align Points tool. 🚧

The alignment reference line appears.



3. Click and drag the either end of reference line to change the angle of the alignment reference line. Click and drag the Alignment Center to change its position.

You can also adjust the alignment reference line using the numeric fields in DesignCentral.

Move DirectionWhen Closest is selected, the point moves to the
alignment reference line using the shortest path.
When Horizontal is selected, the point moves
horizontally to the reference line and when
Vertical is selected, the points moves vertically.

X and Y Coordinates of the Alignment Center, the circle located in the alignment reference line.

Alignment Center Location

Alignment Angle

Move Entire Path

Angle of alignment reference line.

This option is only enabled if the selected points are in different paths. When this option is enabled, the entire path moves to the reference line.



Move Entire Path Disabled

Move Entire Path Enabled

4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Aligning points using vertical move direction

Spacing Points

You can space points evenly horizontally or vertically.

- 1. Select the points.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, select **Spacing**.

- 3. In DesignCentral, enter the distance between points and the direction that they will be spaced.
- 4. Click Apply.



Points spaced horizontally

Repeating Paths

You can create several copies of an open path, creating a closed path.

- Select the points with the **Select Point** Tool. 1.
- 2 From the Arrange menu, select Step and Repeat.
- 3. Click Apply.



Acquiring and Applying Length and Angle

Use this tool to copy on segment angle and length and apply it to another segment.

- Select Apply Length and Angle tool. 1.
- Enter the angle and length values in DesignCentral or press CTRL 2. key and click over the segment from where the angle and length will be copied.

Apply Length	Check this field to apply the length.
Apply Angle	Check this field to apply the angle.
Segment Length	The length that will be applied to the segment. Click the button on right side to select a set of predefined factors.
Segment Angle	The angle that will be applied to the segment. Click the button on the right side to select a set of predefined angles or apply the opposite angle.

3. Click the cursor over the segment where the angle and length will be applied.

Press the SHIFT key to change the point that is used as a reference.







Shift + Click

Acquiring the length and angle

Click to apply the length and angle

Shift + click to apply the length and angle.

Rounding Corners

The Round Corner tool converts corners into rounded corners.

To round one corner of a path:

- 1. Select the Round Corner tool.
- 2. When the cursor is over a sharp corner, click to select.
- 3. Click and drag the center of the circle to adjust the corner or enter the **Diameter** value in DesignCentral.
- 4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.

To round multiple corners in a path:

- 1. Use the **Select** tool to select a path and all its sharp corners, or the **Select Point** tool to select specific corners in a path.
- 2. Select the Round Corner tool.
- 3. Click and drag the center of a circle to adjust the corners or enter the **Diameter** value in DesignCentral.
- 4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Sharpening Corners

The Sharpen Corner tool converts a round corner into a sharp corner.

- 1. Select the Sharp Corner tool.
- 2. Click the point where the sharp corner will begin.
- 3. Click the point where the sharp corner will end.

- 4. Drag the start and end points over the path to adjust the position of the corner. **TAB** key joins the start and end points using a straight line.
- 5. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Converting Segment into a Curve

The Optimize by Curve tool creates a curved segment between two points on a path.

- 1. Select the **Optimize by Curve** tool.
- 2. Click the point where the curve will begin.
- 3. Click the point where the curve will end.
- 4. Drag the start and end points over the path and the Direction Handles to adjust the shape of the curved segment. Hold the SHIFT key while dragging the direction handles to constrain the dragging to the original direction of the handles. Hold the TAB key to change which side of the path will be kept.
- 5. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.

Converting Segment to Smooth Arc

The Optimize by Smooth Arc tool creates an arc segment between two points in a path.

- 1. Select the Optimize by Smooth Arc tool. 🕎
- 2. Click the point where the arc will begin.
- 3. Click the point where the arc will end.
- 4. Drag the start and end points over the path and the center of the arc to adjust the shape of the arc. You can also enter the Diameter value in DesignCentral.

Click the **TAB** key to change the arc position.





Press **TAB** to select the direction of the arc

Optimized path

5. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.

Converting Segment to 3-Point Arc

The Optimize 3-Point Arc tool creates a semicircle between two points on a path.

- 1. Select Optimize by 3-Point Arc tool.
- 2. Click the point where the arc will begin.
- 3. Click the point where the arc will end.
- 4. Drag the start, end and the third control point in the arc to adjust the shape of the arc. Press the **TAB** key to change the arc position.
- 5. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Converting Segment to Arc

The Make Arc tool converts one segment of the path into a semicircle.

- 1. Select the Make Arc tool. 🕗
- 2. Click and drag one segment of the path.

Hold the $\ensuremath{\textbf{SHIFT}}$ key while dragging to constrain the arc into a half circle.

3. Release the mouse button.



Eliminating Extra Points

Many paths that have been auto-traced have a number of extra points that should be removed.

- 1. Use **Select** tool to select a path and all its points, or the **Select Point** tool to select specific points in a path.
- 2. Select the Reduce Points tool.
- Adjust the Tolerance value in DesignCentral. Lower values of tolerance will follow the original path more closely; higher values will eliminate more points.

4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Path after reducing the unecessary points

Removing One Point

You can remove one specific point from the path using the Remove Point tool.

- 1. Select the **Remove Point** tool.
- 2. Click over the points to be removed.
- You can also remove points by selecting them with **Select Point** tool and pressing **DELETE** key.

Adding One Point

You can add one specific point from the path using the Add Point tool.

- 1. Select the Add Point tool.
- 2. Click over the path to add new points.

Removing Self-Intersections

You can break a path that crosses forming a loop:

- 1. Select the path.
- 2. From the **Arrange** menu, point to **Path Direction** and then select **Automatic**.



This command converts every closed path to compounded outlines.

Changing Starting Point

Every path has a starting point. When this path is cut, the plotter will start cutting from the starting point. In an open path, the starting point must be at one end of the path.

To change the starting point:

- 1. Use the **Select** tool to select a path or the **Select Point** tool to select one point or segment.
- 2. Select the Change Start Point tool.
- 3. Click and drag the starting point into its new position.
- **SHIFT** key while dragging moves the starting point to an existing point.
- 4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.

Separating to Closed Paths

The Cleaver tool separates closed paths, creating new **closed** paths. Open paths will be separated into open paths.

- 1. Select the Cleaver Point tool.
- 2. Click and drag the cursor to create a cut line.
- **SHIFT** key while dragging constrains the angle of the cut line



Separating to Open Paths

The Scissor tool will separate paths; always creating **open** paths, regardless of the original path was an open or closed path.

- 1. Select the Scissors tool. 🐣
- 2. Click and drag the cursor to create a cut line or just click to split a path in one specific point.
- **SHIFT** key while dragging constrains the angle of the cut line.



Breaking Paths

Use this tool to separate paths at existing points.

- 1. Select the points.
- 2. Select the Break Path tool.



You can also use the Break Path tool to cut one specific point in your path

- 1. Select the Break Path tool.
- 2. Click the cursor over the path.



Joining Paths

Use this tool to join two points separated by a gap.

- 1. Select the points.
- 2. Select the Join Path tool.
- 3. Adjust the **Tolerance** value in DesignCentral. Points that are separated beyond this distance are not joined.
- 4. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



Merging Paths with the Join Paths Tool

The Join Paths tool can also be used to merge two paths into one:

- 1. Using the **Select Point** tool, select the nearest end points of each of the paths.
- 2. Select the Join Paths tool. Η



Converting Corners to Right Angle

Use this tool to make right angles.

To make one sharp corner a right angle corner.

- 1. Select the corner or segments.
- If you select a segment, all sharp corners in the path will be converted to right angle corners.
- 2. Select the Make Right Angle tool.



Removing Tiny Objects

This tool allows you to remove small objects. This tool is especially good to use after autotracing a bitmap.

- 1. Select the **Remove Tiny Objects** tool.
- 2. Adjust the **Threshold** value in DesignCentral. Paths with size below this value are deleted.
- 3. Click **Apply** or double click anywhere inside the design area.



13.Working with Bitmaps

A bitmap represents an image as a mosaic of colored dots called *pixels*. The pixels are arranged in a fixed number of rows and columns. Bitmaps are also known as *raster images*, and the method used to create them is called *rasterization*.



When a bitmap is edited, the values of its pixels are changed to form the new image.

The following color modes are supported:

Black and	Each pixel is either black or white, with no shades of gray.
White	

- Grayscale Pixels are colored in 256 shades of gray ranging from solid black to solid white.
- RGB The color values for each pixel are expressed as a combination of red, green and blue values. Up to 16.7 million different colors can be reproduced under this color model.
- **CMYK** The color values for each pixel are expressed as a combination of cyan, magenta, yellow and black values. This is the color mode most commonly used in color printing.
- Indexed The color of each pixel is indicated by a reference to a separate color table containing 256 colors.

If a bitmap is magnified or printed at too low a resolution, the individual pixels become visible. This gives the image a jagged, *pixilated* appearance (see above).

Resolution is the number of pixels displayed per unit of printed length in an image, usually measured in pixels per inch (PPI) or dots per inch (DPI).

Using DesignCentral

When a bitmap is selected, DesignCentral shows the Bitmap and Profile

Tabs.

Bitmap Tab

The Bitmap Tab will show some attributes of selected bitmaps. On this tab you can change the resolution of the bitmap. Changing the resolution will automatically change the bitmap's size. Uncheck the **Proportional** option to set different resolutions for horizontal and vertical direction.

Profile Tab

On this screen you can specify the **Input profile** and the **Rendering intent** that will be used as a settings to print this particular bitmap. You can have independent settings for each bitmap. For more information about Input profile and Rendering intent, see "Configuring the System for Color Printing" on page 209.



Creating Bitmaps

There are several ways to include a bitmap into a document.

Importing Bitmaps

You can open or import a bitmap files into your document.

- 1. From the File menu, select Open or Import.
- 2. Select the bitmap file from the list and click **Open** or **Import**.

When importing a bitmap you can create a link between the original bitmap file and your document. This link is an electronic connection between the files and every time that the document is open, the linked bitmaps will be imported. To create a link, check the Link option in the import dialog box.

Exporting Bitmaps

Any bitmap from your document can be exported into a file.

1. If you want to export only one bitmap from your document, select it.

- 2. From the File menu, select Export.
- 3. Select the file format from the list and type the file name
- If you are exporting only a selected object, be sure to check the Selection only option. Checking Suppress Option will export the bitmap using the default settings for the bitmap file format.
- 5. Click **Export**.

Scanning Bitmaps

Scanning allows you to convert a printed image into an electronic image.

To scan an image, you must have a scanner and a computer with your scanner's TWAIN_32 driver installed. TWAIN_32 is a cross-platform interface for acquiring images captured by scanners and digital cameras.

The manufacturer of the scanner device must provide a proper driver for your device. Instructions for setting up your scanner are included in your scanner's user manual.

- 1. Make certain your scanner is on and connected to your computer.
- 2. Place your image on the scanner.
- 3. If you have more than one scanner, from the **File** menu, point to **Acquire Image** and then select **TWAIN Select** and select your scanner from the list.
- 4. From the **File** menu, point to **Acquire Image** and then select **TWAIN Acquire**.
- 5. Follow the scanner's directions.
- 6. After your image is scanned, a bounding box showing the scanned image displays.
- 7. Move the bounding box to the desired location and click to place the image.

Click **TAB** key changes the cursor position in the bounding box. **ESC** key exits the scanning process. **ENTER** to place the scanned image.

On a Macintosh, you can use plug-ins to scan.

- 1. From the **File** menu, point to **Acquire Image** and then choose **Select Plug-in Folder** and select the folder where the scanner plug-in is installed.
- 2. On a Macintosh, from the **File** menu, point to **Acquire Image** and then select the plug-in from the list.

Creating New Bitmaps

You can create an empty white bitmap on your document and draw on it with the bitmap drawing tools.

- 1. From the Bitmap menu, select Create Bitmap.
- 2. Edit the Width, Height and the Resolution of the bitmap.
- 3. Select the Color mode in the list.
- 4. Click OK.

Converting Objects into Bitmaps

You can convert vector objects and text into bitmaps, and then use bitmap filters to apply effects. The process of converting vector objects into a bitmap is called *Rasterization*.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, select Rasterize.

You can edit the following attributes:

Keep Original	Checking this option will preserve the original objects, a new rasterized image will be placed on top of original objects.
Create mask	When this option is checked, the shape of the new bitmap will be the same as the original objects.
Resolution	The resolution of the new bitmap.
Color Mode	The color mode of the new bitmap.

3. Click OK.

Changing Bitmap Properties

Once the bitmap is placed in the design area, you can edit some of its properties like resolution and color mode.

Changing Bitmap Resolution

DesignCentral - Bitmap tab allows you to change the resolution of a bitmap.

To change the resolution of a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- Select the Bitmap tab in DesignCentral. 24
- 3. Select the new resolution from the **PPI** fields at the bottom of the tab.
 - Check **Proportional** to keep the horizontal and vertical resolution the same.

Changing the resolution does not change the number of pixels in the bitmap; it merely changes how many pixels fit into an inch. As the resolution of a bitmap is increased, the area covered by the bitmap will decrease, because more pixels will fit into each square inch. Decreasing the resolution will cause the bitmap to cover a larger area.

Resampling A Bitmap

Resampling changes the resolution of an image without changing the area it covers. It does this by increasing or decreasing the number of pixels used to represent the image. At the same time, the software changes the resolution to compensate for the change in pixel count, so that the bitmap remains the same size.



Black and white bitmap resampled to lower resolution.

Resampling an image will degrade it to some extent. Resampling to a lower resolution makes the image blocky and jagged. Resampling to a higher resolution may blur the image. If you resample an image and are not pleased with the results, use the **Undo** feature to return it to its previous state, rather than resampling it again.

To resample a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, select **Resample**.
- 3. Adjust the values in **Resample** dialog box.

Width and Height	New size (in pixels) of the bitmap. The actual size (in inches or cm) of the bitmap will not be changed, only the resolution of the bitmap will be adjusted.
Proportional	The bitmap is resized proportionally.
Nearest Neighbor	This option is the fastest, but least precise, interpolation method.
Bilinear	Select this option for a quality interpolation method.

Changing Bitmap Color Mode

To change the color mode used by a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Color Mode** and then select the new color mode.

Using the Bitmap Toolbar

All bitmap editing tools are located in the **Bitmap Edit** toolbar.



To display this toolbar, from the **Bitmap** menu, select **Bitmap Edit Toolbar**. Select the menu command a second time to hide the toolbar.

Some tools will not be available for some color modes.

Defining Marquees

Marquees select part of the image and allow only that part to be edited. The marquee can have any shape and its border is marked by a flashing dotted line.



Bitmap with a marquee

Selecting the Entire Bitmap

To define the entire bitmap as a marquee:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, select Marquee Select All.

Using the Marquee Tool

The Marquee tool selects rectangular portions of the bitmap.

- 1. Select the **Marquee** tool.
- 2. Click and drag the cursor over the bitmap.
- 3. After creating one marquee you can add or subtract areas:
 - a. Hold the **SHIFT** key while dragging to add additional sections of the bitmap to the selection marquee.
 - b. Hold the **CTRL** key while dragging to subtract sections of the bitmap from the selection marquee.
- 4. Once drawn, click inside the marquee and drag it to move the marquee to the desired position.





Original bitmap with a marquee



Original bitmap with a marquee



Dragging pressing SHIFT Final marguee key



kev





Final marguee

Using the Lasso Tool

The Lasso tool allows you to select a marguee by tracing its outline on the bitmap.

- Select the Lasso tool. 5 1.
- 2. Click and drag the cursor over the bitmap to create a closed shape.

You can add or subtract areas from an existing marguee by pressing SHIFT and CTRL key.

3. Click inside the marquee and drag it to move the marquee to the desired position.

Using the Magic Wand Tool

The Magic Wand tool lets you select an area of a bitmap based on the color. You can specify the color range, or tolerance, for the magic wand tool's selection.

Select the Magic Wand tool. 1.



2. Adjust the Tolerance in DesignCentral. If DesignCentral is not visible, double click the Magic Wand tool button.

Enter a low value to select colors very similar to the pixel you click or a higher value to select a broader range of colors.

- 3. Click the cursor over the bitmap.
- 4. SHIFT and CTRL keys add or subtract areas from existing marquees.



Marquee created with Magic Wand tool



Clearing Marquee

- 1. Select the bitmap with a marquee.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, select **Clear Marquee**.

Inverting Marquee

- 1. Select the bitmap with a marquee.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, select Invert Selection.

Converting Objects to Marquees

You can convert vector objects into marquees.

- 1. Place the vector object over the bitmap.
- 2. Select the bitmap and the vector object.
- 3. From the Bitmap menu, select Convert Shape to Marquee.

Converting Marquees to Objects

You can convert marquees into vector objects.

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, select Convert Marquee to Shape.





Editing Bitmaps

Using the Move Tool

The **Move** tool copies selected portions of bitmaps, marked by marquees.

- 1. Select the bitmap and create a marquee.
- 2. Select the Move tool.

3. Click and drag inside the marquee and drag to a new position.

The image selected by the marquee is moved to a new position, leaving an area filled with the background color. See "Background / Foreground Color on page 80 about how to set the background color.

Hold the **CTRL** key while dragging the marquee to move a copy of the image enclosed by the marquee while leaving the original in its place.



Original bitmap with a marquee



After dragging the marquee with Move tool



After dragging the marquee with Move tool and **CTRL**

Using the Eraser Tool

The **Eraser** tool is used to remove unwanted parts of a bitmap, to restore an edited bitmap to its original image or fill an area with the background color.

The Eraser tool has the following options in DesignCentral:

In the **Brush Tab**, you can select the shape and the size of the brush. For more details, see "Changing the Brush" on page 168.

In the Eraser Options Tab, you can adjust:







Eraser Tab

Erase to If checked, the eraser will remove only the changes to the bitmap, returning it to its original state.

To erase a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. Select the Eraser tool.
- 3. Click and drag inside the marquee.
- Use the **Undo** feature to remove bitmap editing errors.

Using the Paintbrush Tool

The **Paintbrush** tool paints brush strokes on a bitmap.

The following options are available in DesignCentral:

In the **Brush Tab**, you can select the shape and the size of the brush. For more details, see "Changing the Brush" on page 168.

In the **Paintbrush Options Tab**, the **Opacity** determines the percentage of each stroke that will be added to the bitmap image. Lower numbers will create transparent strokes.





Paintbrush tab

To draw a stroke using the **Paintbrush** tool:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. Select the Paintbrush tool.
- 3. Select the foreground color you want to paint in.
- 4. Click and drag.

Using the Pencil Tool

The **Pencil** tool will create freehand lines on a bitmap using the foreground color.

Following options are available in DesignCentral.

In the **Brush Tab**, you can select the shape and the size of the pencil point. For more details, see "Changing the Brush" on page 168.

In the **Pencil Options Tab**, the **Opacity** determines the percentage of each stroke that will be added to the bitmap image. Lower numbers will create transparent strokes.





Paintbrush tab

To draw a line using the **Pencil** tool:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. Select the Pencil tool. 🗸
- 3. Select the foreground color you want to draw in.
- 4. Click and drag inside the marquee.

Using the Crop Tool

The **Crop** tool allows you to select part of a bitmap and delete the rest of it.

To crop a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. Select the Crop tool.
- Click and drag the cursor over the bitmap to create a rectangular marquee. (Holding the SHIFT key while dragging creates a square marquee).
- The marquee selection for the **Crop** tool must be a simple rectangle or square. You cannot use the **CTRL** or **SHIFT** keys to create a more complex marquee with the **Crop** tool.
- Adjust the width and height values of the marquee in DesignCentral. You can also adjust the cropping size by dragging the marquee's borders and corners.
- 5. Click and drag a point inside the marquee to move it to a new position.
- Click Apply or double click inside the marquee to crop the bitmap to the selected size.



Original image with a cropping marquee





Using the Fill Tool

The **Fill** tool fills areas of a bitmap with the foreground color.

To use the Fill tool:

- 1. Select the Fill tool. 🕅
- 2. Adjust the values in DesignCentral.

Opacity The percent to which the fill will overwrite the bitmap. At 100%, the fill will be completely opaque. At lower numbers, the fill area will get less color, but will retain more detail.

Tolerance The fill expands until it encounters the edge of the bitmap, or a change in color. Tolerance determines how big a change in color the fill will tolerate before stopping. Tolerance ranges from 0 to 255. Enter a low value to fill colors very similar to the pixel you click or a higher value to fill a broader range of colors.







3. Click the cursor on the bitmap.



Original Image



Bitmap after Fill

Using the Stamp Tool

The **Stamp** tool copies portions of a bitmap to another area on the same bitmap.

The **Stamp** tool has the following options in DesignCentral:

- In the **Brush Tab**, you can select the shape and the size of the brush. For more details, see "Changing the Brush" on page 168.
- In the Stamp Options Tab, you can adjust:
 - **Opacity** The percent to which the output of the tool will overwrite the existing bitmap. At 100% the output will be opaque; at lower numbers it will be more transparent.
 - Style If Aligned is selected, the origin and destination points always move together, whether the tool is drawing or not. This is best for copying a large area over to another area of the bitmap.



If **Nonaligned** is selected, the origin and destination points are only synced while the tool is drawing. When the tool is not drawing, the destination point can be moved without moving the origin point. This setting is better for copying a smaller part of the bitmap to a number of different places.



To use the Stamp tool:

- 1. Select the bitmap you want to edit.
- 2. Select the Stamp tool. 🍝
- 3. Adjust the parameters in DesignCentral.
- 4. Click the **Stamp** tool over the location from which you want to copy (the *origin*).
- 5. Move the cursor over the area of the bitmap that you want to overwrite and then click and drag.

To change the stamp origin, hold down the CTRL key and click on the



Stamp tab

new point you want to copy from.

Changing the Brush

In the Brush Tab, you can select the shape and the size of the brush.

Some brushes display a small number in the lower left corner. This number is the size of the brush in pixels.



Double click to change the shape of an existing brush

Click here to create a new brush

Brush Tab

You can add a new brush or change the shape and size of an existing brush. Click the blank area in the Brush Tab to create a new brush or double click an existing brush button to change its properties.

You can enter or change the following brush properties.

- Size Width and Height of the brush.
- Hardness Adjusts how the brush will dissolve with the original image.
- Rotate Angle of rotation.
- **Style** The brush can have either a rectangular or ellipse shape.

Using Filters

Your software allows you to filter bitmaps. The following filters are available:

- Reduce Noise
- Sharpen
- Color Balance

- Blur
- Level
- Brightness / Contrast

Not all filters are available for all color modes.

•

While applying a filter, a on-screen preview will be displayed. You can resize or move the preview area. Also, the area where the filter will be applied can be limited using a marquee.

Reduce Noise Filter

Use this filter to clean up scanned images with small imperfections, known as noise.





To reduce the noise in a bitmap:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Filters** and then select **Reduce Noise.**
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral.

Radius	The size of the noise that will be cleared.
Preview	When this option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the Radius parameter.

4. Click Apply.

Blur Filter

This filter creates a softening effect by averaging the pixels next to the edges.



To apply the filter:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, point to Filters and then select Blur.
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral.

Amount and Radius	Higher values in these fields will produce more blurred images.
Preview	When this option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the parameters.

4. Click Apply.

Sharpen Filter

This filter focuses blurry images by increasing the contrast of adjacent pixels.

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Filters** and then select **Sharpen**.
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral.

Amount and Radius	Higher values in these fields will produce more sharp images.
Preview	When this option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the parameters.

4. Click Apply.

Level Filter

This filter shows a histogram that graphically represents the colors present in the image. Peaks indicate color density. By moving the sliders inwards, it is possible to redefine the black and white points in the bitmap.

1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the Bitmap menu, point to Filters and then select Levels.
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral.
 - Select RGB on the list to adjust all RGB channels at once. If you want to adjust one specific color channel, select Red, Green or Blue.
 - Click and drag the sliders under the histogram, or enter the values in the numeric fields.
 - Click the Auto button and the software will automatically define the black and white point in each channel and then redistribute the intermediate pixel values proportionately.
 - Click the **Reset** button to restore the sliders to their original position.
 - When the **Preview** option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the parameters.
- 4. Click Apply.

Color Balance Filter

DesignCentral shows slider bars (Cyan-Red, Magenta-Green and Yellow-Blue) for adding or subtracting color from the image. Example, if you drag the Cyan / Red slider to the Cyan side, the amount of Cyan in your image is increased and the amount of Red is decreased.

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Filters** and then select **Color Balance**.
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral by:
 - Choose **Shadows**, **Midtones**, or **Highlights** in the list to select the tonal range on which you want to focus the changes.
 - Click and drag the sliders, or enter the values in the numeric fields.
 - When the **Preview** option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the parameters.

4. Click Apply.

Brightness / Contrast Filter

Using this filter, you can adjust the Brightness, Contrast and Saturation of your image.

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Filters** and then select **Brightness / Contrast**.
- 3. Adjust the filter settings in DesignCentral by:



- Click and drag the sliders, or enter the values in the numeric fields.
- When the **Preview** option is checked, you will see a preview while adjusting the parameters.
- 4. Click **Apply**.

Adobe Filters

If you have Adobe filters installed, you can use its filter plug-ins in your software.

Setup the folder where the plug-ins are installed:

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. Go to File Path Tab and enter the folder location in Adobe Plugins.

Click **Browse** to find the folder. For more information about the Adobe plug-in folder location, see your Adobe Photoshop user manual.

3. Click OK.

Once the plug-in folder is properly defined in your computer, you can use the filters:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Adobe Filters** and then select the filter.
- 3. Follow the instructions of each filter.

For more information about Adobe filters, see your Adobe user manual.

Tracing Bitmaps

Tracing allows you to convert bitmap images into vector objects, this allows them to be cut or edited using path editing tools. The tracing area can be limited by a marquee.

A bitmap that has been masked cannot be traced unless it is unmasked first.

After tracing the bitmap, if you want to hide the bitmap to see just the traced paths, click **Preview Bitmap** tool on **View** toolbar or Select **Preview Bitmap** from **View** menu

Using AutoTrace

AutoTrace traces each shape in the bitmap. DesignCentral has the following options:



Noise Reduction

Adjusts the amount of noise that is removed during the tracing process. When **None** is selected, noise will not be removed. The **Most** setting removes the maximum amount of noise.



Original Image





Traced with noise reducion set to Less

Traced with noise reducion set to **Most**

- **Corners** Adjusts how strong the corners are traced. When **None** is selected, corners are not recovered. The **Most** setting recovers the maximum amount of corners.
- Resolution You can trace using the Full resolution on an image or 1/2, 1/4 and 1/8 of its original resolution. When the resolution is lowered, the tracing process is quicker and produces fewer points, but the trace quality will not be as actuate at the reduced resolutions. The **Optimal** setting picks the resolution based on image size to optimize the traces.
- **Tolerance** Controls how closely the tracing follows the bitmap being traced. You can enter values from 0 to 100%. In a high resolution image, lower values will cause the tracing to follow the bitmap more closely, resulting in jagged edges on the curves. Higher values will produce smoother and more even curves, but some details may be lost.
- CornerAdjusts how recovered corners are drawn. Sharp recoversStylethe maximum amount of sharp corners.
- **Color** The color of the resulting vector objects.
- Reverse Traces white areas. Image

To Autotrace a bitmap:

- 1. Select the Autotrace tool.
- 2. Adjust the tracing parameters in DesignCentral.
- 3. You can trace the whole bitmap or parts of it.
 - Click and drag the cursor to create a rectangular bounding box. Surround the objects that you want to trace in the bitmap. Hold down the **SHIFT** key to create a square bounding box.
 - Click the bitmap to trace one object.
 - Click with the CTRL key pressed to trace all of the bitmap.

The objects created by the autotracing will be all wireframes. To fill



those objects, you have to select and compound them.



Tracing one object using Click



Tracing part of the bitmap using Click and Drag

For best results, scan the image to be traced in grayscale (256 gray) at 300-600 DPI. Tracing images scanned at high resolution will create extra points when traced and the paths will not be smooth.

Using Centerline Tracing

The Centerline tool traces a single line down the middle of each part of a bitmap, and includes an option to outline any areas that are wider than a specified width. This tool is useful for producing neon patterns, routing and engraving paths.

Only black and white bitmaps can be traced using Centerline trace.



Paths created in Centerline tracing

DesignCentral has an **Autotrace** Tab with all the options described for the **Autotrace** tool and a **Centerline** Tab with the following options:

Steps	Minimum size to be outlined.	
Close Paths	Creates a separate closed shape in each fully enclosed area.	
Outline large objects	When this option is checked, larger objects will be traced with an outline, instead of a centerline.	
Color	The color of the resulting vector objects.	

To centerline trace a bitmap

- 1. Select Centerline Trace tool. Z
- 2. Adjust the tracing parameters in DesignCentral.
- 3. You can trace the whole bitmap or parts of it:
 - Click and drag the cursor to create a rectangular bounding box. Surround the objects that you want to trace on the bitmap. Hold

down the SHIFT key to create a square bounding box.

- Click the bitmap to trace just one object.
- Click with the CTRL key pressed to trace all of the bitmap.

Using PictureCut Tracing

The PictureCut tool applies a striping effect to a bitmap. The process slices the image with a series of horizontal or vertical stripes of varying widths. The stripes will be joined into several groups, each with their own tab, in order to aid the weeding process.



Original Image



Vertical stripes created using PictureCut



Horizontal stripes created using PictureCut

DesignCentral has a **PictureCut** Tab with the following options:

Enhance Image	Applies an image enhancement filter, before tracing the image.
Brightness	Changes how dark the finished image outputs.
Number of Stripes	Number of stripes that will be created.
Resolution	You can trace using the Full resolution on an image or 1/2 , 1/4 and 1/8 of its original resolution. When the resolution is lowered, the tracing process is quicker and produces fewer points, but the trace quality will not be as actuate at the reduced resolutions. The Optimal setting picks the resolution based on image size to optimize the traces.
Cut Direction	Defines if the stripes are horizontal or vertical.
Reverse Image	Reverses the dark and light portions.
Color To create stripes using P	The color of the resulting vector objects. ictureCut

- 1. Select PictureCut tool.
- 2. Adjust the tracing parameters in DesignCentral.

- 3. You can trace the bitmap or parts of it
 - Click and drag the cursor to create a rectangular bounding box. Surround the area that you want to trace on the bitmap. SHIFT key creates a square bounding box.
 - Click with the CTRL key pressed to trace all bitmap
- 4. To finish using the **PictureCut** tool, select another tool.

Using Color Tracing

The *Color Tracing* converts a color bitmap into colored paths. The color trace process involves two steps. The first is *Posterizing*, which reduces the number of colors. Then the posterized image is traced into objects with different colors.





Original bitmap

Paths created in color tracing

DesignCentral has an **Autotrace** Tab with all the option described in Autotrace tool and a **Color Trace** Tab with following options:

Posterize Bitmap	When this option is checked, the posterized bitmap will be kept.
Edge Filter	Determines how aggressively the application removes noise from the bitmap when posterizing. None does not remove noise and the Most setting will remove the maximum amount of noise.
Number of Posterized Colors	Controls the number of colors the program will use to posterize the bitmap. If there are several shades of a given color in the bitmap, specifying one or more colors than the actual number needed ensures that the correct colors are retained.
Merge into Active	Merges the selected color into the active color.
Undo	Undoes the last merge operation.

To posterize and color trace a bitmap:

- 1. Select Color Trace tool. 🔀
- 2. Adjust the tracing parameters in DesignCentral.

- 3. Select the number of colors to trace.
- 4. You can trace the whole bitmap or parts of it by:
 - Click and drag the cursor to create a rectangular bounding box. Surround the objects that you want to trace on the bitmap. Hold down the **SHIFT** key to create a square bounding box.
 - · Click the bitmap to trace just one object.
 - Click with the CTRL key pressed to trace all of the bitmap.
- 5. Edit the color palette and the posterized image as described in the next item.
 - Merge into Active Undo Color Palette Untraced Color Selected Colors Active Color Background Color

6. Click Accept.

While color tracing an image, you can specify the number of colors that will be in the **Number of Posterized Colors** list.

If a **Background color** was found, it will be placed on the far left side of the color palette. The background color will not be traced, as indicated by the folded corner.

Traced parts of the bitmap with an **Untraced color** will not be displayed in the preview and will not be traced. You can skip any color in the palette untraced, **SHIFT** clicking it.

The color with a triangle underneath is the **Active color**. The active color is used when merging colors. To make one color active, click the space underneath the color.

You can **Select colors** by clicking them. To deselect the color, click again. You can select multiple colors. Selecting an invisible color will make it visible.

When you have two or more colors that you want to trace with the same

color, you can merge them.

- 1. Make the destination color Active.
- 2. Select the colors that will be merged.
- 3. Click Merge into Active button.

You can undo the operation by clicking the **Undo** button. Only the last merge can be undone.

You can also merge two colors together by clicking and dragging the source color over the destination color button.





Posterized Bitmap

Posterized bitmap after merging colors

To change the order of the colors in the palette, click and drag the color to a new position.

You can edit a posterized color in the color palette. To do so, click the color with the **CTRL** key pressed.

After posterizing the image:

1. Click the area in the posterized image with the source color.

The cursor will change into a paint bucket cursor

2. Drag into the object where the color will be applied.

When the mouse button is released, the color will be applied.



Click the object with the source color



Drag where the color will be applied Release the button and the color will be applied.



14.Working with Effects

Your software contains a number of tools that you can use to add special effects to the elements in your document.

Common Features

There are a number of basic functions that you can use on all effects.

Separating Effects

To separate an effect from the original object, from the **Effect** menu, select **Separate [...]**. After the command name, the effect name will be displayed.





Clearing Effects

To remove an effect, from the **Effect** menu, select **Clear** [...]. After the command name, the effect name will be displayed.

Using Combine Effects

Combine effects are applied to overlapping objects, separating or merging the portions that are overlapping. Combine effects can only be applied on vector objects, they are not available for bitmaps.

Weld Effect

Welds selected objects into single objects, removing overlapping. Use this tool to eliminate extra lines in overlapping objects that will be cut.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Combine** and then select **Weld** command.





Your software also has an **Auto Weld** feature; this feature will automatically weld all overlapping objects with same color, before outputting your job to a cutter. For more information, see "Cut / Plot

Dialog - Advanced Tab" on page 225.

By default, the objects with different colors will be weld using the topmost color, to weld objects based on their colors, see "Combine Effect Options" on page 182.

Cut Out Effect

Removes the selected overlapping areas from the bottom most object.

- This effect will be always applied to the topmost objects. If you want to apply the effect to other objects underneath, group the top objects first.
- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Combine** and then select **Cut Out** command.





Objects after Cut Out effect

Common Effect

Deletes all of the selected objects except for the overlapping area.

- This effect will be always applied to the topmost objects. If you want to apply the effect to other objects underneath, group the top objects first.
- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Combine** and then select **Common** command.





Exclude Common Effect

Deletes the overlapping area.

- This effect will be always applied to the topmost objects. If you want to apply the effect to other objects underneath, group the top objects first.
- 1. Select the objects.



2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Combine** and then select **Exclude Common** command.





Objects after Exclude Common effect

Fuse Effect

Removes all of the object on the top layer, except for the overlapping area. The object on the lower layer remains intact, and the fused portion retains its original color.

- This effect will be always applied to the topmost objects. If you want to apply the effect to other objects underneath, group the top objects first.
- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Combine** and then select **Fuse** command.





Separate Overlap Effect

Creates new objects from overlapped areas of selected objects.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, point to Combine and then select Separate Overlap command.





Combine Effect Options

You can control the combine effect by changing the combine options.

To change the combine options:

From the Effect menu, point to Combine and then select Combine Options command.

Or

- 1. From the Edit menu, select Preferences.
- 2. Select Tools Tab.
- 3. Select Combine Options from the list on left side of the dialog box.

You can adjust the following options:





Using the Outline Effect

Your software allows you to place inlines, outlines, or contour lines around any object.

Outline A closed path created around the outer edges of the selected object and inside holes such as the inside of closed letters (a, o, etc).

Contour An outline without holes.

Inline

A closed path created around the inner edge of the selected object.



The term "outline" in this chapter refers to Inlines, Outlines, and Contours.

Contour

In an outline, you can adjust the number of lines, their width and the spacing between them.

Outlines Effect

- 1. Select the objects that the effects will be applied to.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Outline.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral or drag the control points.



Inline

4. Click Apply.

Adjusting Outlines Using DesignCentral

When outlines are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.

	Contour	Ŧ
-1	0.100cm	-
a	0.101cm	•
#	5	•
0	. 🔾 .	

Select the effect type between Contour, Outline and Inline.

Width of the outline.

Distance between outlines.

Number of outlines.

This option allows you to choose between using the same color for each outline generated or to create a "gradient" of colors for each outline created.







Gradient Outlines



Allows you to select to create a backing behind the original object. This option is only available when the distance between outlines is zero.



The outline color.

Select the appropriate Joint Type option to specify how corners are outlined.









Controls the sharpness of the corners

Select the appropriate Line Cap style option to specify how open paths are outlined. Choose from Round, Square or Butt cap styles.



Adjusting Outlines Using Control Points

When you apply an outline, a reference line is displayed with control points. You can adjust some of the attributes by dragging the control points.

- Click and drag the **Width** point to change the Outline width.
- Click and drag the **Offset** point to change the gap between outlines.
- Click and drag the Reference Location point to change the position of the Reference line over the object where the outline is applied.



Using the Shadow Effect

Your software allows you to place a shadow around any object.

The following types of shadows are available:









Applying Shadows to Objects

To apply a shadow effect to one or more objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Shadow.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral or drag the control points.
- 4. Click **Apply**.

Adjusting Shadows Using DesignCentral

When shadows are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.

Drop 💌	Select the shadow type between Block, Cast, Perspective and Drop.
□+ 11.262cm 🛨 1 6.813cm 🛨	The horizontal and vertical offset (distance) from original object. These fields are not available for perspective shadows.
27 50.0% 📑 27 47.4° 📑	Height ratio and slant angle. These fields are available for Cast shadow only.
러 1.000cm \Xi	The distance between the object and the shadow when overlap or offset shadow is selected.
55.8% 🕂	Perspective ratio. Only available for perspective shadows.
—	Shadow color
	Relief mode, determines how the shadow is cut out by the original.



The following relief modes are available for each shadow:

Block and Perspective shadows





backing

With backing



Offset





Drop shadows





With backing







Surround

Cast shadows









Ð You can see the difference when backing is applied if you separate the shadow from its original object



Adjusting Shadows Using Control Points

Click and drag the shadow to adjust the height ratio and slant angle (cast shadow), horizontal and vertical offset (other shadows) or perspective ratio (perspective shadow).

Using the Stripes Effect

Use the Stripe effects to apply stripes to any vector objects. There are three types of stripes that can be applied.



Applying Stripes to Objects

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Stripe.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral.

Adjusting Radiant Stripes Using DesignCentral

When radiant stripes are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.



Number of stripes on the object.



Determines the percentage of the image that is covered with stripes, from 0 to 100%. Changing this value changes the width of the stripes, but not the number.



X 35.297cm 🛨 Y 8.900cm 🛨

XY Coordinates of the point from which the stripes radiate.



The point selected in this grid will be the point from which the stripes radiate.







<u>∠</u> 0.0°

Initial angle of the stripes.



Angle: 30 degrees



degrees

Adjusting Radiant Stripes Using Control Points

You can also adjust some of the above fields by dragging the control points.

- Click and drag the right (bottom) edge of each stripe to change the • stripe angle. SHIFT key constrains the angle.
- Click and drag the left (top) edge of each stripe to change the stripe • gap. SHIFT key constrains the angle.
- Click and drag the center point to change where the stripe starts.

Adjusting Gradient Stripes Using DesignCentral

When gradient stripes are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.

# 5 📑	Number of stripes	s on the object.	
1 50.0%	Determines the p stripes, from 0 to width of the stripe	ercentage of the image 100%. Changing this va es, but not the number.	that is covered with alue changes the
	This value is disa selected in the G	bled when Vary stripes ap mode field.	s and gap is
	Percentage: 20%	Percentage: 50%	Percentage: 80%
∡ 0.0° ÷	Angle of the strip	es.	
	Angle: 0 degrees		Angle: 00
	Angle. 0 degrees	Angle. 45 degrees	degrees
55.0%	Determines the d percentage from	egree of the gradient, e 0 to 100%.	xpressed as a
	This value is disa selected in Gap n	bled when Even Stripe node field.	s and Gap is
Gap Mode	Even Stripes and Gap	The stripes and gap w	idth is constant.
	Vary Stripes and Gaps	The stripe and gap wide effect.	dth has a gradient
	Vary Stripes	The stripe width chang gradient effect, the ga	ges, producing a p width is constant.



Adjusting Gradiant Stripes Using Control Points

You can also adjust some of the above fields dragging the control points.



- When Even Stripes and Gap mode is selected, click and drag point 1 or 2 to change the stripe gap.
- When Vary Stripes and Gaps mode is selected, click and drag point 1 or 2 to change the stripe gradient.
- When **Vary Stripes** mode is selected, click and drag point **1** to change the stripe gap. Click and drag point **2** to change the stripe gradient.
- Click and drag point **3** to change the stripe angle. Hold down the **SHIFT** key to constrain the angle.

Adjusting Circular Stripes Using DesignCentral

When circular stripes are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.



Number of stripes on the object.

Determines the percentage of the image that is covered with stripes, from 0 to 100%. Changing this value changes the width of the stripes, but not the number.







Determines the distance from the center to the first gap.

The distance from the center of the rings to the outermost ring is specified in this entry box. If the object extends beyond the last ring, the remainder of the object is solid.





percentage from 0 to 100%. The point selected in this grid will be the center of the circular stripes.

Determines the degree of the gradient, expressed as a

Adjusting Circular Stripes Using Control Points

You can also adjust some of the above fields dragging the control points.

- Click and drag the inside edge of each stripe to change the stripe gradient.
- Click and drag the outside edge of each stripe to change the stripe gap.
- Click and drag the center point to change where the stripe starts.

Using The Distort Effect

Your software allows you to distort vector objects. The following distortions are available in your software. When a distortion effect is applied to a bitmap, it will mask the bitmap using the distortion shape.





For example, you can use the distortions to fit your design in a bitmap, to see how the final sign will look.



Distorted vector object over the bitmap

Applying Distortions to Objects

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, select **Distortion**.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral or drag the control points.
- 4. Click Apply.

Adjusting Distortions Using DesignCentral

When distortions are applied to objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.



Select the distortion type.

Rotation angle of the distortion envelope.



Rotates distortion envelope 90 degrees clockwise or counter clockwise.



Mirrors distortion envelope horizontally or vertically.

Adjusting Distortions Using Control Points

For each distortion, you have a number of control points that can be dragged to adjust the distortion to your requirements. The number of points and the effect when the points are dragged will vary according to



the distortion type.



In some symmetric distortions like Wave-Top and Patch, **CTRL** key moves the handles independently from the other handle.

Using the Blending Effect

Your software allows you to blend two objects. The shape and color of one object will gradually change to another object. Both objects must be vector objects.



- 1. Select two objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Blend.
- 3. Adjust the number of steps in DesignCentral.
- 4. Click Apply.

Using the Lens Effect

Use the Lens effects to control transparency and appearance of an object's color.

The lens effects are applied to the topmost object and can only be applied on vector objects, except for the tranparent lens, which can be applied to bitmaps. The lens effects are only for color printing.

Transparent Effect

With this effect, the object where the effect was applied will have a transparency that allows you to see the objects underneath.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Lens** and then select **Transparent** command.

The following options can be adjusted in DesignCentral:

Opacity Degree of opacity applied to object. This value can range from 0 to 100 %.

Hide Stroke Check this option to apply the transparency to the object's stroke.

Invert Effect

The colors of all vector and bitmap objects under the object where the effect is applied will be inverted.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Lens** and then select **Invert** command.

The following options can be adjusted in DesignCentral:

Hide Stroke Check this option to apply the effect to the object's stroke

Brighten Effect

The colors of all vector and bitmap objects under the object where the effect is applied will be brightened.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Lens** and then select **Brighten** command.

The following options can be adjusted in DesignCentral:

Brightness Degree of brightness applied to object. This value can range from 0 to 100 %.

Hide Stroke Check this option to apply the effect to the object's stroke.

Wireframe Effect

The vector objects under the object where the effect is applied are displayed without any fills.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Lens** and then select **Wireframe** command.

The following options can be adjusted in DesignCentral:

Hide Stroke Check this option to apply the effect to the object's stroke.

Magnify Effect

The objects under the object where the effect is applied are magnified.

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the **Effect** menu, point to **Lens** and then select **Magnify** command.

The following options can be adjusted in DesignCentral:

ZoomDegree of magnification applied to object. Values above 100% willScalemagnify the objects; values below 100% will reduce the objects.

Hide Check this option to apply the effect to the object's stroke.

Stroke

Using the Underbase Effect

The underbase feature is used to create a "primer" coat of base color that the actual image will be printed on top of. When printing a light image onto a dark medium, for instance, it is useful to print a white underbase underneath the image to prevent the dark color from showing through.



Two types of underbases can be created.

A solid underbase is generally used with vector objects and text. It consists of a solid coat of a single spot color, typically white, that follows the contour of the objects above. The ink is always at 100% coverage. A solid underbase can be the same size as the objects above, or it can be choked down to fit inside the margins of the objects, or bled out to extend outside the margins.

A variable underbase is used with bitmaps and gradients. The density of the underbase varies to match that of the image above. This allows the color of the medium to show through behind a transparent area of a picture, for instance. A variable underbase is always exactly the same size as the image above.

An underbase can only be output on a thermal transfer device, or by using the Print as Separations feature.

Creating a Solid Underbase

To create a solid underbase for one or more objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Underbase, then Solid Underbase.
- In DesignCentral, select either choke H or bleed
- 4. Set the size of the choke or bleed in the $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ field.

- 5. Check **With Holes** to make holes in the underbase underneath holes in the selected objects above.
- 6. Select the color of the underbase from the list.
- 7. Click Apply. 🗹

After creating the underbase, the underbase and the objects are joined together into a compound object.

Creating a Variable Underbase

To create a variable underbase for one or more objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Underbase, then Variable Underbase.
- 3. Select the **Resolution** that the underbase will be applied at. This should match the resolution supported by your output device.
- 4. Select the color of the underbase from the list.
- 5. Click Apply.

After creating the underbase, the underbase and the objects are joined together into a compound object.

Removing an Underbase

To remove an underbase:

- 1. Select the compound object containing the object and its underbase.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Clear Underbase.

The underbase is removed and the objects are normal objects again.

Separating an Underbase From the Objects It Was Based On

To separate an underbase from the objects it was based on:

- 1. Select the compound object containing the object and its underbase.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Separate Underbase.

The underbase becomes a separate object, and the objects it was based on become normal objects again.

Making a Vector Object into an Underbase

To make a vector object into an underbase:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Underbase, then Make Underbase.

Underbase	•
OK	Cancel

3. Select the color of the underbase from the list and click **OK**.

Releasing an Underbase Back to a Vector Object

To change an underbase made from a vector object back into a vector object:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, select Underbase, then Release Underbase.

Using the Finisher Effect

The Finisher effect defines a coating that will cover an area of the design and protect it from scratches and UV. The finish can be applied as a rectangle covering an entire area of the design, or as a shape that follows the outlines of the design.



A finish area can only be output on a thermal transfer device, or by using the Print as Separations feature.

Creating a Rectangular Finish

To create a rectangular finish for one or more objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Finisher, then Rectangle Finisher.
- 3. Select the spot color for the finish from the list in Design Central.

After a finish area is created, it and the objects it was created for become a single compound object.

Creating a Shape Finish

To create a finish that follows the outlines of one or more objects:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Finisher, then Shape Finisher.
- 3. Select the spot color for the finish from the list in Design Central.

After a finish area is created, it and the objects it was created for

become a single compound object.

Removing a Finish

To remove a finish area:

- 1. Select the compound object containing the object and its finish area.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Clear Rectangle Finisher or Clear Shape Finisher.

The finish area is removed and the objects are normal objects again.

Using Color Trapping

The Color Trapping effect removes most of the overlapping material between objects. The effect leaves enough overlapping material to ensure that no gaps will exist between the objects, even if the registration is slightly off.





Original objects (Show Fill is off)

Objects after Color Trapping

Applying Color Trapping to Objects

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Color Trapping.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral.
- 4. Click Apply.

Adjusting Color Trapping Using DesignCentral

When Color trapping is applied to overlapping objects, the following attributes can be adjusted in DesignCentral.

0.600in

Overlapping distance.

Light to Dark

Select if the trapping will be performed from the light to dark color or vice versa.







Include Strokes

When this option is checked, the color trapping will be applied to the object strokes.

Using Styles

Styles allow you to capture and apply the fill, stroke and the effects from one object to another. Styles can be stored for future use.

Copying and Applying Styles

- 1. Select the object with the desired fill or effect.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Styles and then select Copy Style.
- 3. Select the object where the fill or effect will be applied.
- 4. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Styles and then select Paste Style.

The fill, stroke and the effects from the first object is applied to the second object.



Storing Style in Style List

You can select which properties from the original object will be stored in a style. For example if you have a green object with a shadow, you can choose to save only the shadow as a style, the shadow and the green fill or just the green fill.

To store the properties from an object as a style:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Styles and then select Store Style.

- 3. Enter the new style name and select the properties that will be stored in this style.
- 4. Click Save.

Applying Style in Style List

To apply one style from the style list:

- 1. Select the object.
- 2. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Styles and then select Paste Style.
- 3. Select the style from the style list.
- 4. Click Apply.

Editing Style from Style List

Edit styles allows you to edit a stored style by renaming, copying or deleting.

To rename or copy a style:

- 1. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Style and then select Edit Style.
- 2. Select the style from the list then click **Copy** or **Rename**.
- 3. Enter the new style name.
- 4. Click OK.

To delete a style:

- 1. From the Edit menu, point to Graphic Style and then select Edit Style.
- 2. Select the style from the list then click **Delete**. Go to step 4.
- 3. Click OK.

Using Contour Cut



Contour cut is a feature that creates a cutting line around objects, either vector or bitmaps.

This allows you to output an image in a printer and then cut its contours using a cutting plotter. If you have a hybrid device (printer with cutting capabilities), you can print and cut using the same machine.

For more information about how to output a contour cut job see

"Contour Cutting" on page 240.

Creating a Contour Cut Around an Object

To create a contour cut:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Effect menu, select Contour Cut.
- 3. Adjust the values in DesignCentral or drag the Control Point on Contour Cut line.
- 4. Click Apply.

Adjusting Contour Cut Using DesignCentral

The following attributes from Contour Cut can be adjusted in DesignCentral.



Adjusting Contour Cut Using Control Points

When you apply an outline, a reference line is displayed with control points. You can adjust some of the above fields dragging the control points.



Transforming an Object into a Cutting Line

If you need a cutting line with a special shape, you can create a vector object and transform it into a cutting line.



A fan shape converted into a cutting line

To convert a vector object into a cutting line:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, point to Contour Cut and then select Make Contour Cut.

The object's outline color will change to a light gray, indicating that it has been converted to a cutting line. Even after being converted to a cutting line, the object will have its original attributes.

To convert the cutting line back to a vector object:

- 1. Select the cutting line.
- 2. From the Arrange menu, point to Contour Cut and then select Release Contour Cut.

15.Working with Measurements and Labels

The software allows you to measure, label and dimension objects. By using the measuring tools, you can indicate the horizontal, vertical, or diagonal dimensions of the design or label an object.

The lines and labels can be output to a printer or cutter. For more details, see "RIP and Print Dialog - Advanced Tab" on page 236 or "Cut / Plot Dialog - Advanced Tab" on page 225.

Measuring Distances

Use the Measure tool when you need to know the distance between two points in your design.

To measure the distance between two points:

- 1. Select Measure tool.
- 2. Click and drag the cursor.
- Just click to show a position of one point in your design.

Once you release the mouse button, Design Central displays the following information:



DesignCentral for Measuring



191.1 m

101 6 mm

Creating Dimensioning Lines

The Dimension tool allows you to create dimensioning lines between two points in your design. The dimension lines can be horizontal, vertical or diagonal.

When you are creating a dimension label, the Snap to Point feature is automatically enabled.



To create a dimension line:

- 1. Select the Dimension tool. 💾 👤 🟈
- 2. Click the point where the dimension line will start. As you move the cursor, a line displays the direction you are moving.
- 3. When you are creating a diagonal dimension line, **SHIFT** key constrains the line angle to horizontal or vertical. **CTRL** key makes the dimension lines perpendicular to the object.
- 4. Click the point where the dimension line will end.
- 5. Adjust the position of the dimension line and click.



Automatically Dimensioning Objects

Automatic Dimension The tool allows you to automatically create horizontal and vertical dimension lines around an object. These dimensions lines are not linked to object and will the not be automatically updated if the object changes size.

To automatically create a horizontal and vertical dimension line in an object:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Select the Automatic Dimension tool.

Dimensioning to Page

The Dimension to Page tool allows you to automatically create horizontal and vertical dimension lines that measure the position of the object to the lower left corner of the design area. These dimensions lines are linked to the object and will be updated if the objects change position.



Text objects are measured from the baseline of the text.

To create dimension to page lines:

- 1. Select the objects.
- 2. Select the Dimension to Page tool.

Creating Labels

Use the label tools to draw an arrow with a text attached to it.

There are two types of label:





п



To create a label:

- 1. Select the label tool.
- 2. Click the point where the label line will start.

As you move the cursor, a line shows the direction in which you are moving.

- 3. If you are creating a two segment label, click to define the point where the first segment ends and the second segment begins.
- 4. Click the point where the label will end.
- 5. Edit the label text in DesignCentral and press the ENTER key.

After creating the label you can adjust the following attributes in DesignCentral:



Font and style used.

Size of the font used.

Arrow type used in the label line.

Advanced

Click this button to access the advanced options.

You can adjust the following options using the Advanced Options dialog box.

When this option is on, a box displays around the label text

۲.	9.850mm	+	
∢ I	9.000mm		

Arrow size

Editing Dimension Lines

After creating the dimension line you can adjust the following attributes in DesignCentral:

Tr Arial Regular ▼	Font and style.
IA 25.400mm 🗄	Size of the font.
மி	When unlocked, you can edit the dimension text in the field just above the padlock.
←, ←, ←, ←, <i>←</i> ,	Arrow type used in both ends of the dimension line.
<u>++</u> [++	Arrow position. The arrows can be inside or outside the sidelines.
Linked	When this option is checked, if you resize the
object that this dimension line is measuring, the dimension value will automatically reflect the resizing.

Once you unlink this option, you cannot revert it back to link again.

Advanced Click this button to access the advanced options.

You can adjust the following options using the Advanced Options dialog box.

Prefix	This text will be placed before the dimension value.
Suffix	This text will be placed after the dimension value.
Scale	Scale used to show the dimension value. A scale of 50% will display half of the actual value in dimension value.
Unit	Unit used to show the dimension value.
Precision	Number of decimal places in dimension value.
Trailing Zeros	When this option is off, no decimals will be displayed.
Supress unit	When this option is on, no unit will be displayed after the dimension value.
Border text	When this option is on, a box will appear around the dimension text.
┝┉┥ <mark>╻</mark> ┝┉┥	The dimension text can be above, over or under the dimension line.
⊨ ,	It fixes the position of the dimension on the line.
1. X.	When a diagonal dimension is created, the dimension text can aligned with diagonal line or be always is horizontal position.
୲ୢୄୄୄୄୄ୲⊢ୄୄ୲⊭ୢ	Using this buttons, you can show only the sideline, no sideline, no arrow or show all
	Arrow size.

ProDeSIGN

16.Configuring the System for Color Printing

You should configure your system before printing. Color Settings dialog provides the default settings that are applied to files that are imported into your software and to emulate the output color on the monitor.

To open the Color Settings dialog box and to configure your software for color printing, from the **Edit** menu, select **Color Settings**.

Setting the Input Profiles

Most of files are calibrated for specific output devices. Files in RGB format are usually color corrected for display on a certain monitor, and CMYK files are color corrected for output to a certain printer. Input profiles are used to convert these files to a neutral color space, so that your software can later color correct for your output device using the output profiles.

The **Input Profile** tab in the Color Settings dialog allows you to set the input profiles that are used when importing files. The input profiles should match the output devices (either a monitor or a printer) used in the creation of the files.

ole: Settings			×
Display Settings	Input Profile	Rendering Intent	
Assumed inpu	it source profile-		
RGB:			
Default RG	B		Add
CMYK:			
Default CM	YK	-	Add
Grayscale:			
Default CM	YK	•	Add
		OK	Cancel

In this dialog box, select the following settings:

RGB Select the RGB profile that matches the source of images.

CMYK Select the CMYK profile that matches the source of images.

Grayscale Select the profile that matches the source of grayscale images.

You can add additional profiles by clicking the Add button.



Setting the Display Profiles

You can emulate the output color on your computer monitor, in a process called Soft Proofing.

In order for this emulation to be as accurate as possible, you have to set the appropriated profiles in the Display Settings tab of Color Settings dialog.

Profiles for display		
Monitor:		
Default RGB		Add
Printer:		
GRAY		-
Profile:		
Default CMYK		Add
Soft proof preserves w	hite point	
Son proof preserves w	nite point	

Monitor Select the profile that matches your computer monitor.

Printer Select the printer that will be used to print your design. Check Soft proof preserves white point option to emulate the white point of the paper.

Selecting Rendering Intents

Rendering intent specifies how a color space from the input file gets mapped to the color space of the output device.

Rendering intents can be specified for four different types of objects that make up jobs:

)isplay Setti	ngs Input Profile Rendering In	itent
Default re	ndering intents	
Vector:	Relative colorimetric	Pure Hue
Bitmap:	Perceptual	Pure Hue
Text	Relative colorimetric	Pure Hue
Gradient:	Relative colorimetric	Pure Hue
		Cancel

Bitmap	The rendering intent to use with bitmap images (raster images) contained in your job file.
Vector	The rendering intent to use with vector objects such as circles, polygons, lines, arcs and Bezier curves contained in vector-based files like PostScript, DXF or Adobe Illustrator.
Text	The rendering intent to use with text objects contained in PostScript and other vector-based files.
Gradient	The rendering intent to use with vector-based gradient objects contained in PostScript and

other vector-based files. Gradients created in bitmap files will be rendered using the **Bitmap** rendering intent.

The options set here are only used as a default setting for your output. You can specify different rendering intents for each bitmap or color in your design. Please see "Profile Tab" on page 156 and "Color Specs - Color Tab" on page 85 for more details.

Choose from one of the following rendering intents:

- **Perceptual** This intent is best for photographic images. Colors outside of the output device's gamut are either clipped or compressed to fit the output device's color space.
- Saturation This intent is best for graphic images, such as vector art, where vivid colors are more important than true color matching. Colors outside of the output device's gamut are mapped to colors at the extent of the gamut's saturation. Colors that fall within the gamut of the output device are shifted closer to the gamut's saturation extent. This rendering intent may also be used to boost colors within a photographic image.
- Relative
ColorimetricThis intent is best for images, such as logos, where the output
needs to match the original image. Colors that fall outside of
the output device's gamut are clipped. This method may
reduce the total number of colors available. The white point of
Relative Colorimetric is always zero
- AbsoluteThis intent is similar to Relative Colorimetric, but has a differentColorimetricwhite point value. Absolute Colorimetric represents colors
relative to a fixed white point value of D50. For example, the
white of paper A will be simulated when printing on paper B.
This intent is best for color proofing.
- Spot Color This intent was created to supplement the Saturation intent. Spot Color maps colors similarly to the Saturation rendering intent, but Spot Color rendering intent produces the greatest saturation possible, and should not be used with photographic images.

Using Pure Hue Settings

The Pure Hue buttons allow you to specify that certain color channels should not be mixed in with other colors when the job is rendered. These settings can be different for each of the 4 types of object.

For instance, if a job contains yellow text, you could check the Pure Hue setting on the yellow color channel for text, so that no other colors appear in the yellow text.

To adjust the Pure Hue settings for a type of object:

1. Click the **Pure Hue** button next to the object's rendering intent.



			X
🗖 Cyan	🗖 Magenta	T Yellow	🗖 Black
☐ Red	🗖 Green	🗖 Blue	🗖 White
All On	All Off	ОК	Cancel

- 2. Check the boxes for each color channel that you want to preserve unmixed.
 - Click All On to check all color channels, or All Off to clear all channels.
- 3. Click OK.



17.Printing to a Desktop Printer

Before the final output, you may want to print a sample to your desktop printer for proofing.

To print your document in a desktop printer:

- 1. Make sure all the objects and colors you want to print are visible in your document.
- 2. From the File menu, select Print.
- 3. Select your desktop printer and set the appropriated options.

Check **Selection** to print only the selected objects.

4. Click OK.

Previewing the Design (Windows Only)

The Print Preview allows you to visualize the output before printing to the desktop printer. The preview should reflect any changes that you made in the Printer Properties (paper size, orientation) and Print Options.

To show a Print Preview:

- 1. From the File menu, select Print.
- 2. Select your desktop printer.
- 3. Click Preview.



Print Preview (One Page)

Print Preview (Two Pages)

In the Preview dialog box, you have the following buttons:

Print	Closes the preview window and returns to the Print dialog.
Next / Prev Page	Allows you to navigate through the pages.
One Page / Two Page	Displays 1 or 2 pages of preview per screen.



Zoom In / Zoom Out	Allows you to zoom the print preview.
--------------------	---------------------------------------

Close

Closes the preview window and returns to your design application.

Print Options

The Print Option dialog box allows you to control several advanced options about desktop printing, such as Scale, Position and Tiling.

To display the Print Options dialog box:

- 1. From the File menu, select Print.
- 2. Select your desktop printer.
- 3. Click Options.
- On a Macintosh, select your program name in the list. Some printers will show the options in the print dialog.

Adjusting the Output Size

Scale allows you to adjust the output size to either fit the paper or fit the desired size.

Fit drawing Resizes the output to fit the entire design into the paper. to paper

Fit border to Resizes the output to fit the entire drawing area into the paper. **paper**

- Scale Enter the scale in percentage to resize the output. You can use the Tiling option to print images that are bigger than the paper size that your printer can handle.
 - If you want to print a scale of 1 inch = 1 feet, enter the value "1:12" in this field.



Original Design 16 x 7 inches



Output on a letter size paper with **Fit drawing to paper** option checked.



Output on a letter size paper with **Fit border to paper** option checked.



Output on a letter size paper with **Scale** set to 25%.

Tiling the Output

Using the Tiling option you can select to tile the output and set the overlap between the tiles.

Print tiled pages When this option is checked, the output will be tiled.

Overlap

Sets the overlap between the tiles.





Original Design

Tiled output

Setting the Output Position

The Position option allows you to center the image or to set the position.

Center on paper	The output is centered on the page.
Offset X / Y	Sets the offset from the edge of the paper

Other Printing Options

Print border	The border of the design area is printed.
Print wireframe	The vector objects are printed without fill.
Include job info	The Job Info is printed with the design. This option is only available if Fit drawing to paper is selected in Scale option. To customize the layout of the print, see "Using Templates" on page 34.
Use device margins	The margin information from the printer driver is used.
PostScript data	When Binary is selected, the data is compressed using a binary encoding and then sent to the printer.

18.Cutting your Design

Before you can cut any design, make sure you have established a connection from your design software to the Production Manager and created a setup for your output device as instructed in the section "Setting up Production Manager" on page 245.

Follow the steps below to send the document to your cutting device:

- 1. From the File menu, select Cut / Plot.
- If you have any object selected, only these selected objects are cut. To cut all objects in the document, click the **Selection Only** button.
- 2. Adjust the settings available in the dialog box as necessary and click **Send**.

Setting the Cut/Plot Dialog

The Cut/Plot dialog box gives you complete control over how the job is produced. This dialog box consists of three Tabs - **General, Panel and Advanced** Tabs.

The area on top of this dialog is common for all Tabs:



Cut / Plot Dialog - General Tab

The General tab allows you to specify the size of media, size of the job and the location of your output on the media.



You can resize the Cut/Plot dialog, by clicking and dragging the lower right corner.

Sending Mode

The Send List allows you to select what to do with the job once it arrives in the Production Manager queue.

Send now The job is automatically processed and sent to the output device.

Hold in list The job stays in the Production Manager queue until it is manually sent to the output device from the Production Manager window.

Save to file The job is processed and saved as a native file.

The **Send Now** mode is not available if the output device is inactive or the Production Manager is on another computer on the network and the option **Allow remote Send Now/Interactive** is not enabled in the Production Manager Preferences. See "Changing the Preferences" on page 250 for more details.

Color Palette

Select the color to display in the preview area. Only the color displayed will be processed. You will not be able to select individual colors if the option **Send all colors** in the Advanced tab is checked.

Click and drag the colors to change the output order.

Setting the Visibility of Colors

Right-clicking on a color in the color palette allows you to toggle the **Visible** setting on and off for that color. A color that is set to invisible will not be output.

If you want to output all colors except one, check **Send All Colors** on the **Advanced** tab and then turn off the **Visible** setting on the color you do not want to output.

Material Settings

The Material group box allows you to specify the size of the media used in your output device and entering the Media Width and Height. The media size is used to panel your job if it is larger than the media.

size by selecting User Defined.

connected through a serial port (COM).

Select your media size from the list or specify a custom

Poll Size: polls the size of the media loaded in the cutter. This feature only works for devices that are

User defined	•
2	
럼 (51.000in	•
	•

Material width.



Position Settings

The Position group box allows you to specify where on the media the job is output.

0.000in	4 7
두 (0.000in	+
×	

Horizontal offset distance.

Interactive: moves the cutter as you change the position of the job on the preview area.

Show me: draws a bounding box of the job without lowering the tool.

You can also positioning the job by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Choose **Select** tool from the toolbar of Cut/Plot dialog.
- 2. Click and drag the preview to a new position.



Size Settings

The Size group box allows you to change the size of your output.

- ↔ 20.200in 🕂 Width of the output.
- 🗘 20.862in 📑 Height of the output.

100.000% 📑 Scale ratio.

Copies Settings

The Copies group box allows you to set the number of copies and the spacing between them.

8 1 📑

The number of copies.



The amount of space between the copies.



The copies are automatically positioned to optimize the media usage.

Positioning Tools

The Positioning tools allow you to rotate, mirror, or position the job.



The job is not centered.

FD4

The job is centered in the width of the media.



The job is centered in the sheet of media.







Centered in the media



Centered in the Center width of the media media



Viewing Tools

The viewing tools allow you to manipulate the job on the preview area.



Changes the position of the job on the media by clicking and dragging the job preview.



Zooms in or out. Hold the CTRL key to Zoom out.

Return the preview area to the default view.

imes

Display the current color selected in the preview area. If all colors are selected, the box will be crossed out.



Click this button to toggle the preview to display the selected objects only or the entire design.

Cut / Plot Dialog - Panel Tab

Jobs that are bigger than the media size should be tiled before output.



The panel can be divided in several columns and rows. Each section or cell is called a *Tile*.

The Panel tab provides several tools to tile the job.

Panel Toolbar

The tool bar provides tools to change the Panel mode and to automatically tile.



Locks the columns so that the tiles on a same column can be adjusted as a group.





Locks the rows, so that the tiles on a same row will can be adjusted as a group.



Locks both columns and rows, so that the entire columns or rows can be adjusted as a group.







一美見死死 死

The job is automatically tiled based on the job size and the media size.



The job is automatically tiled based on the size of the drawing area and media size.

Moving the Panel

The panel defines the area of design that will be processed for output. Elements of the design that are outside the bounds of the panel will not be cut.

Resizing the Panel

You can resize the panel by dragging the panel border or using the Panel Size group to numerically enter the panel size.

Changing the panel size with the mouse:

- Move the cursor on top of the small red 1. squares along the panel border.
- 2. Click and drag to resize the panel.



Entering the panel size numerically:





Tiling the Job Using the Preview Area

You can add new tiles to the panel:

- 1. Move the mouse cursor on top of the panel border.
- 2. Click and drag towards the center of the panel to add a new panel.



Click and drag the panel border to add a new tile

To resize existing tiles:

- 1. Move the mouse cursor on top of the tile border.
- 2. Click and drag to resize the tile.



Click and drag the tile border to resize the tile

Tiling the Job Using the Tile Group Box

The Tile group allows you to specify the tiles numerically.

To specifying the size of each tile numerically:

- 1. Select the tile you want to resize in the preview area.
- 2. Enter the new size.



To tile the job evenly, check the tiling option you want to perform and enter the desired number or the size of rows and columns.

V 12 3	•
ک 🛃 🗹	•

Divides the job into a specified number of evenly sized columns.

Divides the job into a specified number of evenly sized rows.





Even Colums

Even Rows



Divides the job into a specified size of columns, starting from the left side.



Divides the job into a specified size of rows, starting from the bottom.



Specifying column width

Specifying Overlap Between Tiles

You can specify the amount of overlap between rows and columns. By overlapping, you can eliminate any gaps between the tiles when assembling the final output. Overlap is measured as the total amount two rows columns or overlap.



Check to create an overlap on the vertical edges of tiles.



Check to create an overlap on the horizontal edges of tiles.



The width of the overlap.



Specifying row height



To specify a tile that will not be output, double-click or right-click the tile. The tile will be disabled.



Cut / Plot Dialog - Advanced Tab

The Advanced tab of Cut / Plot allows you to set several options specific to cutting jobs.

7	
CX-300@C0M1:	Job Status
Properties	
General Panel Advanced	
 ✓ Advance after plot Cut page crossings Pause between colors Pause between pages ✓ Apply copy spacing between pages ✓ Weed lines ✓ Weed border Easy weed Weeding margin: 0.100in ↔ ✓ Horizontal weed lines ✓ Vertical weed lines Fill plot Fill plot Fill plot Fill angle: 0.000* ↔ 	Passes: 1 Automatic registration marks Carlo and al colors: Single panel, single job Auto-weld Auto-trap: Choke/bleed distance: 0.125in Optimize cutting order: 10.000n Optimize cutting order: 10.
🔍 🖻 🍭 🔤 Medium Green	Send Done

The following options can be adjusted in this dialog box:

Advance after plot	Advances the media and resets the origin.
Cut page crossings	Cuts the borderline of a page when the output is tiled into several pages.
Pause between colors	Selects whether the Production Manager should pause after each color is processed, allowing you to change the pen or the media. This option can only be selected when Send all colors is checked.
Pause between pages	Selects whether the Production Manager should pause after each page is processed, allowing you to load the media after each page.
Apply copy spacing between pages	Separates pages, tiles, and panels using the amount of space specified for spacing out copies in the Copies group on the General tab.
Passes	Defines the number of times that the blade will cut the same path. Set this option if you are using thick or hard media that can't be cut in a single pass.
Automatic Registration	Adds small rectangles to the corners of each layer to aid in positioning each piece.
Marks	The automatic registration marks are simply placed at the corners of each layer. If the layers are different sizes, the automatic registration marks will not line up with each other. If you want to use the automatic registration marks to align different colored objects to each other, either the panel size must be identical for all layers, or you must use Send All Colors with the single panel option enabled.
Send all colors	See "Sending Each Color as a Different Job" at page 227.
Weed border	Cuts a border around all objects in the selected color.
Easy weed margin	Cuts a weeding border with the specified margin around each object in your design.
Horizontal weedlines	Adds weedlines between lines of text (or objects). Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet
Vertical weedlines	Adds weedlines between characters (or objects). Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet
Auto-weld	Removes intersections of overlapping objects of the same color.
Auto-trap	Specifies the amount of overlap between objects of different colors.

Optimize cutting order	When this option is not selected, the objects are cut or plot in the order they were created. When selected, the software processes the objects within the specified section of length before moving to the next section.
Convert stroke to outlines	Selects whether the strokes will be cut separately as an object.
Plot dimensions and labels	Selects whether the labels and dimensions created with measure tool will be cut or plot.
Total size	Displays the total size of the job.
Fill plot	Allow you to define the angle and pen width for fill plot.
Cutter Driver Options	Launches the Cutter Driver Options dialog. See "Cutter Driver Options" at page 261.

Sending Each Color as a Different Job

Check **Send All Colors** option to process each color separately. When this option is checked you can select how each color will be processed:

the same panel size for all colors.

Single Panel, Single Job



Single Panel, Separate Jobs



Separate Panels, Separate Jobs



A separate job file is created for each color but they are still processed using the same panel size for all colors.

The job is sent as a single file and processed using



A separate job file is created for each color and you can define the panel size for each color separately.





19.Printing your Design

Before you can print any design, make sure you have established a connection from your design software to the Production Manager and created a setup for your output device as instructed in the section "Setting up the Production Manager and Configuring Output Devices".

Follow the steps below to send the document to your cutting device:

- 1. From the File menu, select RIP and Print.
- 2. Adjust the settings available in the dialog box as necessary and click **Send**.

Setting the RIP and Print Dialog

The RIP and Print dialog box gives you complete control over how the job is produced. This dialog box consists of four Tabs - **General, Panel, Advanced and Color** Tabs.

The area on top of this dialog is common for all Tabs:

	11				
Current	Printer 1@LPT1:	-	Job	Status	
Printer Displays	Properties	Color	Monopoly1.fjb	Holding	
the					
Setup Properties	Tabs	Switche: Producti	s to on Manager	Active jo	obs for this device



RIP and Print Dialog - General Tab

The General tab allows you to specify the size of media, size of the job and the location of your output on the media.

	177				_ 🗆 🗙
	DesignJet 800PS 42@TCP/IF	-	Job	Status	
	Properties				
	General Panel Advanced	d Color			
	Material	,40 ,36	,32 ,28 ,24	,20 ,16 ,12 ,8	4 .
Material Group box	42 in roll	4			
	42.000in 🚊	4			
	📫 🚺 600.000in 🚊	<u>6</u>	— .		
Sending Mode	Send now 💌	8	Preview	w Area	
	Position	8			
Position Group box	□• 0.500in 🚊	38			
	∓ [0.500in 💼	24			
	Cine	8	_		
	↔ 23.712in ÷	()			
Size Group box	🗕 📫 🔁	=		A PLAN	
	100.000% 🛨	1 <u>5</u>			
	Copies	<u>00</u>		THE REAL	
Copies Group box		4		and the second second	
	4⊷ř (0.100in 🚖	0		.46994	
Positioning tools		4			
Zoom tools				Send	Done

You can resize the RIP and Print dialog, by clicking and dragging the lower right corner.

Sending Mode

The Send List allows you to select what to do with the job once it arrives in the Production Manager queue.

Send now The job is automatically processed and sent to the output device.

Hold in list The job stays in the Production Manager queue until it is manually sent from Production Manager.

Save to file The job is processed and saved as native file (prt files).

The **Send Now** mode is not available if the output device is inactive or the Production Manager is on another computer on the network and the option **Allow remote Send Now/Interactive** is not enabled in the Production Manager Preferences. See "Changing the Preferences" on page 250 for more details.

Material Settings

The Material group box allows you to specify the size of media used in your output device by entering the Media Width and Height. The media size is used to panel your job if it is larger than the media.



User defined	•
--------------	---

Select your media size from the list or specify a custom size by selecting **User Defined**.



Material width.

‡ 🛛 600.000in 🛛 📑 Material height.

Position Settings

The Position group box allows you to specify where on the media the job is output.

🗣 0.000in 🛛 🕂

Horizontal offset distance.

두 0.000in 📑 Vertical offset distance.

You can also positioning the job by clicking and dragging:

- 1. Choose Select tool from the tool bar of RIP and Print dialog.
- 2. Click and drag the preview to a new position.



Size Settings

The Size group box allows you to change the size of your output.

\leftrightarrow 20.200in 📑

Width of the output.

- 🗘 20.862in 🛛 🚍
- Height of the output.

🕺 100.000% 📑 Scale ratio.

Copies Settings

The Copies group box allows you to set the number of copies and the spacing between them.

-

The number of copies.



The amount of space between the copies.



The copies are automatically positioned to optimize the media usage.

Positioning Tools

The Positioning tools allow you to rotate, mirror, or position the job.



٢Č٩

The job is not centered.

The job is centered in the width of the media.

The job is centered in the sheet of media.







Place at origin

Center in the width

Center in the media



Rotate the job in 90-degree increments.



Mirror the job vertically.

Viewing Tools

The viewing tools allow you to manipulate the job on the preview area.



Changes the position of the job on the media by clicking and dragging the job preview.



Zooms in or out. Hold the CTRL key to Zoom out.



Return the preview area to the default view.



Click this button to toggle the preview to display the selected objects only or the entire design.

RIP and Print Dialog - Panel Tab

Jobs that are bigger than the media size should be tiled before output.



The panel can be divided in several columns and rows. Each section or cell is called a *Tile*.

To specify a tile that will not be output:

• Double click or right click the tile. The tile will be disabled.



The Panel tab provides several tools to tile the job.

Panel Toolbar

The tool bar provides tools to change the Panel mode and automatically tile.



Locks the columns so that the tiles on a same column can be adjusted as a group.



Locks the rows, so that the tiles on a same row will can be adjusted as a group.



Locks both columns and rows, so that the entire columns or rows can be adjusted as a group.





\₩.



The job is automatically tiled based on the job size and the media size.



The job is automatically tiled based on the size of the drawing area and media size.

Moving the Panel

The panel defines the area of design that will be processed for output. Elements of the design that are outside the bounds of the panel will not be printed.

To move the panel:

Resizing the Panel

You can resize the panel by dragging the panel border or using the Panel Size group to numerically enter the panel size.

Changing the panel size with the mouse:

- 1. Move the cursor on top of the small red squares along the panel border.
- 2. Click and drag to resize the panel.



Entering the panel size numerically:

Ħ	54.666cm 芸	The width of the panel.
‡□	56.458cm 芸	The height of the panel.
ф	0.254cm 🕂	Margin around the panel



Tiling the Job Using the Preview Area

You can add new tiles to the panel:

- 1. Move the mouse cursor on top of the panel border.
- 2. Click and drag towards the center of the panel to add a new panel.



Click and drag the panel border to add a new tile

To resize existing tiles:

- 1. Move the mouse cursor on top of the tile border.
- 2 Click and drag to resize the tile.



Click and drag the tile border to resize the tile

Tiling the Job Using the Tile Group Box

The Tile group allows you to specify the tiles numerically.

To specifying the size of each tile numerically:

- 1. Select the tile you want to resize in the preview area.
- 2. Enter the new size.



The width of the selected tile.

🗘 🛛 56.458cm 🕂 The height of the selected tile.

To tile the job evenly, check the tiling option you want to perform and enter the desired number or the size of rows and columns.



Divides the job into a specified number of evenly sized columns

Divides the job into a specified number of evenly sized rows





Even Columns

Even Rows



Divides the job into a specified size of columns, starting from the left side.



Divides the job into a specified size of rows, starting from the bottom.





Specifying row height

Specifying Overlap Between Tiles

You can specify the amount of overlap between rows and columns. By overlapping, you can eliminate any gaps between the tiles when assembling the final output. Overlap is measured as the total amount two rows or columns overlap.





Check to create an overlap on the vertical edges of tiles.



Check to create an overlap on the horizontal edges of tiles.

÷

0.200in

The width of the overlap.



RIP and Print Dialog - Advanced Tab

The Advanced tab of RIP and Print, allows you to set several options specific to color printing jobs. The Advanced tab has two layouts depending on which printer you are using.



Color correction	Color Settings	Г	Overprint	Option	ns
Color mode:	CMYK (Resin)	-	Resolution	304.19	300 T DPI
Dither type:	Angled Screen			-	Screen
Output profile:	None			•	
Density adjustment:	None			-	Edit
Print substrate Print dimensions ar Print as separation All Print Print spot colors Spot I	d labels s: t seperations in cofor Color Mapping	Color:	int marks: color bands	Crop m Black	arks <u>v</u>

Advanced Tab with automatic profile selection

Advanced Tab (standard)

Setting the Print Quality

The Output Settings group and the Driver Options define all the settings related to the quality of the output.

Color correction	If this setting is not checked, incoming jobs are assumed to already have color correction.
Color settings	Clicking this button will launch the Color Settings dialog. See "Configuring the System for Color Printing" on page 209 for more details.
Overprint	Check to print the overlapping areas of all objects (the bottom "layers" will not be removed when RIPing). This is useful if you have set up color trapping on the elements of your design, for instance.
	Click on Options to set the following additional options:

	verprint with trapping
Choke/I	oleed distance: 0.010in 🚊
Order:	C Light to dark C Dark to light
	Cancel OK

Check Overprint with trapping to automatically apply color trapping to the job. If you have already applied color trapping manually, the software will choose the setting with the smallest choke/bleed distance.

See "Using Color Trapping" page 197 for details on color trapping and the options provided here.

- Media Select the media type your job will be printed on.
- Print mode Select the desired quality of your printout.
- **Color mode** If your output device supports multiple color modes, then you can select one of the supported color modes here.
- **Resolution** Choose an appropriate DPI for your job. A higher DPI produces higher quality output but increases the processing time.
- **Dither type** Selects the dither type, or the pattern in which the individual dots that make an image are applied to the media. See "Color Management Tab" on page 265.
- Screen Clicking the Screen button will launch a dialog box when angled screen dither type is selected. You can adjust frequency, angle and shape for each output channel (CMYK).
- Output profiles are created for the combination of ink, media, profile Output profiles are created for the combination of ink, media, resolution and dither type of your output device. When selecting a profile, be sure to select the profile that matches these criteria. Select the option Add from disk to add ICC output profiles from another source.
- Info Clicking the Info button will launch the Profile Properties dialog, which contains information pertaining to the ICC output profile that has been chosen under Output profile and also UCR/GCR settings.
- Density
 Selecting a density file applies the densities created through the

 adjustment
 Density Adjustment module. If you do not wish to apply a density

 adjustment, set this field to None.
 None.
- Edit Clicking this button launches the Density Adjustment dialog.
- DriverClicking this button launches the Driver Options dialog. See "PrintOptionsOptions Tab" on page 269 for details.
- Print marks Check to print the selected type of mark:

Crop Marks

Adds crop marks to the output to aid in trimming the printout.





Overlap Marks

Adds overlap marks to the output to aid in aligning overlapping tiles.



Color

Select the ink color that will be used to print the print marks.

Print substrate color	Selects if the color of the drawing area will be printed with the design.
Print dimensions and labels	Selects if the labels and dimensions added with dimension/label tools will be printed with the design.
Print as separations	Allows the job to be printed as a separation using black ink. You can select to print one color channel or all color channels as a separate job.
Color Keys	Prints separations in color.
Print spot colors	Allows you to map the spot color used in the design to specific ink in the printer. See "Printing with Spot Colors" on page 239 for more details.
Print Color Bands	Prints a thin strip of each ink color along the selected edges of the print to show that all heads are firing.

RIP and Print Dialog - Color Tab

The Color tab allows you to adjust the color.

A slider represents each color channel of your output device. Increase or decrease the density of ink for any given channel by adjusting the sliders. You can also enter the values numerically in the edit boxes.

11			
Printer 201PT2]	Job Status	
Properties			
General Panel Advanced	Color		
	-1.0	0.0 1.0	
Oven	1.1.1	<u></u>	0.00
Manuala			D.m.
reager to			100
Yellow		· · · · · · · · · · ·	p.00
Black		—)——	0.00
AL		<u> </u>	0.00
Contrast		<u> </u>	0.00
			Beset
N Q B			Send Done

All Allows you to quickly adjust all color channels as a group.

Contrast Adjusts the contrast of the image.

Reset Clicking this button will restore the settings to their original state.

Printing with Spot Colors

Some printers support spot color inks. Spot colors are used to reproduce colors that are difficult to produce using standard inks. If your printer supports spot colors, you can use the following steps to print them.

- 1. Use the color library for your printer to create your design.
- The software already comes with spot color libraries specific for printers that support spot color printing. If a certain color is not listed in the color library you should create the color and define as a Spot color.
- 2. From the File menu, select RIP and Print.
- 3. Select the Advanced Tab.
- 4. In the **Miscellaneous** settings group, check the option **Print spot** colors
- 5. Click the **Spot color mapping** button. The Spot Color Mapping dialog box appears.
- Select the drawing color you want to change the mapping and select the Printer color from the map to list. Select Print as process color if you want to print that color using process colors (CMYK). Select Skip to disable the color.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Set the appropriate options in the RIP and Print dialog and then click **Send** to print the job.
- The printer or the Production Manager will prompt whenever you have to change the spot color ink in the printer.

Contour Cutting

Contour cutting allows you to print and then cut a contour line around your design. The output of a design with contour cut involves several steps as follow:

- 1. Create your design in your software and add a contour cut line. See "Using Contour Cut" on page 199 for more details.
- 2. From the File menu, select RIP and Print.
- 3. Select the **Advanced** tab in the **RIP and Print** dialog.
- 4. Click **Contour**.
- Your design must have contour cut or the **Contour** button will be disabled. See "Using Contour Cut" on page 199 to learn how to create contour cuts.
- 5. Set the contour cut options.
- 6. Print your design.



7. Cut the contour cut.

Setting Contour Cut Options

The Contour Cut options are set in the Contour Options dialog box.

Select the device to process the contour cut from the list on the top of this dialog box.

The following options can be selected:

Material	Trend	Registr	ation mark
User defined 91.4400cm	151		Vertical
127.0000cm			
Number of passes:	1		
Advance after plot			Auto-weld
Cut page crossings			Weed border
Optimize cutting order:	25.4000	cm 🔽	Cutter Driver Options

Contour Options dialog box

User defined 💌	Media size.		
럼 50.000in 🛛 📃	Material width.		
‡ 🛛 50.000in 🛛 🕂	Material height.		
121	Poll Siz cutter. connec	ze : polls the siz This feature or ted through a s	ze of the media loaded in the ily works for devices that are serial port (COM).
Registration mark	Select the type of registration mark to help you align the printed media in the cutter for contour cutting. Some cutters are equipped with sensors that detect the registration marks automatically. The color of the registration marks is determined by the		
	Print M RIP and	l arks Color se d Print dialog.	etting in the Advanced tab of the
I		None	No registration marks are printed. Use this option for print and cut devices.
l	□:	Vertical	Places registration marks on the right side of the image. The arrow in the registration mark indicates the media feed direction for cutting.
	• •	Horizontal	Places registration marks on the bottom of the image. The arrow in the registration mark indicates the media feed direction for cutting.
į	Ħ	4 Points Horizontal	Places registration marks along the upper and lower horizontal edges of the job.
	*	Gerber Edge	Special registration mark for Gerber Edge.



÷	Gerber Edge Center	The Gerber Edge registration mark, located along the center of the lower horizontal edge.
	Fargo Impressa	Special registration mark for Fargo Impressa.
Д	Mimaki EX	Special registration mark for Mimaki EX cutters.
口	Mimaki Type 2	Special registration mark for Mimaki EX cutters.
0	OPOS	Special registration mark for Summagraphics cutters.

One set for all
copiesIf checked, only one set of registration marks will be
printed for the entire job.

Send Specify how the job will be sent to the output device:

As hybrid job	Sends both printing and cutting data as a single job. This option is available for print and cutting devices.
As separate jobs	Sends printing and cutting data as separate job. This option is available if you use different devices for cutting and printing.
Print job only	Sends only the printing job.
Contour job only	Sends only the cutting job

Cutting the Contour on a Hybrid Device

If you are using a hybrid device, the contour will be cut automatically after printing.

Cutting the Contour As a Separate Job

If you send the print and cut data as separate jobs, the software will output the print job first. The cut job will be put in the queue of the selected cutting device, and it status will be set to **Holding**. You can then load the output medium from the printer into the cutting device and send the cut job to the device.

In order for the contour to line up properly on the print job, you must align the cut job to the printed output using either automatic alignment or manual alignment.

Cutting the Contour on a Cutter with Automatic Alignment

- 1. RIP and print the job.
- 2. Remove the output medium from the printer and load it into the cutter.
3. Output the cut job in the Hold Queue as you would a normal print job.



- Align the cutting head over the first automatic registration mark (lower right if not marked) using the controls on the front panel of the cutter.
- 5. Click **OK** to cut the contour.

Cutting the Contour on a Manually Aligned Cutter

- 1. RIP and print the job.
- 2. Remove the output medium from the printer and load it into the cutter. Make sure the output medium is straight, and align the registration marks to the origin for the cutter.
- Output the cut job in the Hold Queue as you would a normal print job.

ОК
Cancel

4. Select the method to be used to position the cut head over the registration marks and click **OK**.

InteractiveYou will position the cut head over the registration marksalignmentusing software controls.

Digitize
alignmentYou will position the cut head over the registration marks
using the controls on the face of the cutter.

- This option is only available when a bi-directional communications protocol such as serial or USB is used.
- a. To indicate the position of the registration marks using Interactive alignment:

Press the arrows to point or enter the po point and click OK.	move to the fi sition of the fi	rst rst	
linch	•		
X: 0.000inch	<u>.</u>		
Y: 0.000inch	-	⊕,	

- i. Use the arrow buttons to position the head of the cutting device over registration mark 1 and click **OK**.
- ii. Repeat for all additional registration marks.
- b. To indicate the position of the registration marks using **Digital alignment**:



- i. Use the front panel controls on the cutter to position the head of the cutting device over registration mark 1. Press **Enter** on the cutting device, then click **OK**.
- ii. Repeat for all additional registration marks.

	×
er and click OK to start cuttir	ng.
Cancel	
	er and click OK to start cuttir Cancel

5. Make sure the knife is loaded into the cutter, then click **OK** to cut the contour portion of the design.



20.Setting up Production Manager

Production Manager configures output devices such as cutters and printers, controls the output of files, and connects to the output device.

Production Manager automatically launches when you execute the output command from your software. You can also preview jobs in Production Manager and change your jobs properties before sending to your output device.

Understanding Setups

A Setup consists of an output device and its associated properties. Setup information includes the type of output device, the media being used, the size of the media, and any settings specific to the output device.

Creating Your First Setup

Before you can output your design, your software must establish a connection with the Production Manager and an output device must be configured. Follow the steps below to create a setup for your output device:

- 1. From your software, select **RIP and Print** or **Cut/Plot** from the **File** menu.
- 2. Select "On this computer (Local)" and then click **OK**.
- 3. Select the type of device, manufacturer and the model of your output device, and then click **Next**.
- 4. Select the appropriated port and click **Finish**.

Adding New Setups

You can add more setups directly from the Production Manager. See "Adding New Setups" on page 251 for more details.

Configuring a Setup

Once you have created a setup, you can change its properties.

Most of the settings available in Setup Properties are also available in the RIP and Print or Cut/Plot dialog. The settings from the Setup Properties are applied to files that are added directly to Production Manager using the Add Job command.

To display the Setup Properties:

- 1. From your software, select **RIP and Print** or **Cut/Plot** from the **File** menu.
- 2. Select the output device in the RIP and Print or Cut/Plot dialog from the list.
- 3. Click Properties.

Or

- 1. Select the output device from the left pane of Production Manager.
- 2. From the **Setup** menu, select **Setup Properties**.

Or

Double-click on the output device listed in the left pane of Production Manager.

Setup Properties contains several tabs where you can specify the media settings, printing options, cutting options, etc. See "Editing Setup Properties" on page 253 for more details.

Setting up Production Manager on a Network

The output device does not need to be connected directly to the computer where Production Manager is installed.

Connecting Production Manager to Networked Output Devices

If your output device supports a network connection, or you have a Network Print Server, you can connect the output device to the Production Manager through a network. Please follow the instructions below to use a network to connect the output device.



- 1. The computer must have TCP/IP protocol properly installed and working.
- 2. The output device or the Print Server must support: TCP/IP, FTP or LPR and have a valid IP address assigned to it.
- 3. When adding setups in Production Manager, set the port to TCP/IP, FTP or LPR depending on the protocol supported by the device and enter the IP address assigned to the output device.

Using the Design Software and Production Manager on a Network

Production Manager can be installed on a different computer as long as that computer has a hardware security key attached. The computer that has Production Manager and the computer that has the design software must be networked and TCP/IP must be installed and working properly.



The following steps will guide you to connect your design software to a Production Manager installed on a different computer:

- 1. Attach the hardware key on the production station and install the Production Manager.
- 2. Install the design software on the design station.
- 3. Launch the Production Manager on your production station, create the setups for the output devices and leave it running.
- 4. Launch the design software on your design station. The design software can run without the key as long as the network is properly configured and the key is attached to the production station.
- 5. Select **RIP and Print** or **Cut/Plot** from the **File** menu.
- 6. Select "On another computer (Network)" and click OK.
- 7. Select the Production Manager on the network and click OK.



21.Using Production Manager

See "Setting up Production Manager" on page 245 if you are launching the Production Manager for the first time or configuring the output devices.

The Production Manager Window

When you launch Production Manager, the main window is displayed. To launch Production Manager, do one of the following:

- From your design software, select **RIP and Print** or **Cut/Plot** from the **File** menu. The Production Manager is launched and the **RIP** and **Print** or **Cut/Plot** dialog box appears.
 - The Production Manager may be hidden behind the design software. To bring it to foreground, click on the Production Manager icon in the RIP and Print or Cut/Plot dialog.
- Double-click the Production Manager icon in the desktop.



Setup Area This area displays the setups (output devices) currently configured are displayed. Click the (+) or the (-) symbols to expand or collapse the list of jobs associated with the setup.

Job Area This area displays the jobs associated with the selected setup.

Command Buttons

The command buttons allow quick access to most common tasks in Production Manager. See "Working with Jobs" on page 253 for more details on each command.

	Add Job	Adds a job to the selected output device.
	Save As	Saves the selected job to a file.
	RIP Job	RIPs the selected job, and leaves it in the RIP queue.
7	Print Job	Prints the selected job to the specified output device, RIPing it if necessary.



	Nest	Nests the selected print jobs together so as to use the minimum amount of the output media.
	Unnest	Unnests the selected set of nested jobs.
STOP	Abort	Stops selected file from RIPing or printing.
Ŕ	Delete	Deletes the selected job or jobs.

Changing Preferences

To set the application preferences for Production Manager, from the **Edit** menu, select **Preferences**.

		×
Units:	Inches	
Precision:	0.000	
Archive		
Path:	C:\Program Files\FlexiSIGN-P	Browse
Format:	Native job	
File paths		
Jobs:	C:\Program Files\FlexiSIGN-P	Browse
Temporary files:	C:\Program Files\FlexiSIGN-P	Browse
RIP		
RIP band height:	Auto	Rows
Maximum numbe	r of RIP threads: 3	
🔲 Print while RI	Ping	
	Send Now/Interactive	
	Beset OK	Cancel

The following settings are available:

Units	The units of measurement displayed.	
Precision	The degree of precision to use with measurements.	
Archive Path	The folder where archived jobs are saved.	
Archive Format	The format that archived jobs will be stored in.	
	Original job	Archives the image in its original file format. When you add the archived file back into the software, it will need to be RIPed again before printing.

Native job	Archives the print data in the output device's
-	native language. No preview information will be
	available. When you add the archived file back into
	the software, it will not need to be RIPed again
	before printing.

File Paths Sets the folders which will be used for the following:

- Jobs The folder that job files are stored in.
- Temporary
filesThe folder for temporary files that are created
during the processing of jobs.
 - RIPing files requires a significant amount of storage space. If the drive on which the temp directory has only a small amount of storage space, you may want to consider relocating the temp directory to a drive with more available storage space.

RIP Band Height	Sets the band size that is processed during RIPing. Smaller values allow large files to RIP but will take longer to process.
Maximum number of RIP threads	Sets the number of jobs that can be RIPed at one time. One RIP thread is required for each file being RIPed, and one RIP thread is required to generate a preview for each file.
Print while RIPing	If this option is selected, the software will RIP and print the job simultaneously. RIPing and printing simultaneously may affect overall performance.
Allow remote Send Now/	If this option is selected, the software will allow Send Now and Interactive operation from a remote design station.

Interactive

Working with Setups

Setups provide the link between the software and your output devices. Each setup contains the following information:

- The type of output device being used.
- The method used to communicate with the device.
- Details of how incoming print jobs will be processed.
- The default job properties that will be applied to a new job.

Production Manager allows for multiple setups to be in use at the same time. It is possible to have more than one setup for each output device. This is useful because it allows you to configure each setup for a different purpose. You can have one setup for printing proofs, and another for final output, for instance. You can also have different setups for different output media.

Adding New Setups

To add new setups:



1. From the Setup menu, select Change Setup or Add Setup.

Click the manufacture	and model of your setup.	×
Manufacturer:	Model name:	
Ante Arbru Brady CalComp Canon Desktop Printer DGI Eastech Encad E	Sherpa Sherpa Plus	
C Vinyl cutters	Color printers C Hybrid devices	
	< Back Next > Cancel	

- 2. Select the type of device being set up.
- 3. Select the **Manufacturer** and **Model Name** of the output device from the list.
- 4. Click Next.

Setup name: Design/et 800PS 4		×
		-
	< Back Next	Cancel

- 5. Edit the Setup name of the device.
- 6. Click Next.
- Select the **Port** the output device uses for communication. If necessary, edit the communications settings for the chosen port. See "Editing Setup Properties" page 253 for details on the communications settings.
 - If **TCP/IP** is available for the network output device, use **TCP/IP**. If not, you should choose **LPR** or **FTP**.
- 8. Click Finish.

Setting Up Desktop Printers as Output Devices

To set up a conventional printer as an output device:

1. Add the printer to the computer as a standard Windows printer.

- 2. When creating the setup in the software, select **Desktop Printer** under **Manufacturer**, then select the print queue for the desktop printer under **Model name** and click **Next**.
 - The **Port** list will be disabled.
- 3. Click Finish.

Selecting a Setup

To select a setup, highlight its icon in the setup area. Only one device can be selected at any time.

Activating Setups

An *active setup* is a setup that is ready to output jobs.

To make a setup active, do one of the following:

- Check the box next to its icon in the setup area.
- Select the setup icon, then from the **Setup** menu, select the **Make Active**.
- Right-click on the setup icon and select **Make Active** from the context menu.

Deleting Setups

To delete a setup, do one of the following:

- Select the setup icon in the setup area and click on the **Delete** button in the toolbar.
- Select the setup icon in the setup area, then from the Edit menu, select Delete.
- Select the setup icon in the setup area and press the **Delete** key on your keyboard.
- Right-click on the setup icon in the setup area and select **Delete** from the context menu.

Deleting a setup will also delete all jobs associated with the setup.

Editing Setup Properties

To edit the setup properties associated with a particular output device, do one of the following:

- Right-click the setup icon in the Setup Pane and select Properties.
- Select the setup icon in the Setup Pane, then from the Setup menu, select Setup Properties.
- Double-click the setup icon in the Setup Pane.



€-

Job Workflow Tab

The Job Workflow tab displays information about the output device, media size.

🔁 😂 🖉		
Setup name: CMY	K Printer	
🔽 Rotate image to	fit media	
		Reset

Setup name

Rotate image to fit media

Name of the setup.

If checked, the image will automatically be rotated to better fit the dimensions of the output medium if needed.

Communication Tab



The **Settings** section of this tab changes depending on the port used to connect to the output device.

Ports are listed in order of popularity for each device. Only the ports that are usable by the output device are listed.

The standard port for the device is selected by default. Some of the port settings may still need to be entered or edited, however.

	×
Port	1
ТСРЛР	
Browse	
Settings	
TCP/IP Address: 10 . 1 . 0 . 1	
Port Number: 9100	
Job Defaults Apply OK Cancel	Ī

- **Port** Select the port to which the output device is connected. The port list is limited to the ports that are actually present on your computer and usable with your output device.
 - LPT Parallel port is the most common method to connect printers to the computer. The following settings are available:

Trans- mission buffer	The size of the transmission buffer in bytes
Check port state before sending	If checked, the software will send a data packet to the printer to test if the printer is connected before beginning to print the job.
Use standard LPT driver	Whenever possible, the software uses a custom LPT driver to increase the performance of the LPT port.
	If checked, the software will use the standard Windows LPT driver instead. Performance will be diminished, but reliability may be enhanced. The following settings are enabled when the custom driver is in use:

		Mo	de	Use EC Capabi fastest speed. Paralle may be	CP (Enhanced lities Mode) for the possible transmission EPP (Enhanced I Port) is not as fast, but more compatible.
			P es A	Using [increas from 2	DMA with ECP can e the maximum bit rate mbps to 4 mbps.
		Yield if device is busy		If check release resource driver v This ma perform	ked, the software will the extra system es used by the custom while the printer is busy. ay aid overall hance.
TCP/IP	Use this port if connection.	you	r output	device	supports network
	TCP/IP addres	S	The TC device	P/IP add (required	dress of the output d).
	Port Number		The por the outp or enter	t numbe out devie a custo	er used for printing to ce. Select from the list om number.
USB/ FireWire	USB/FireWire of support them. If installed when	drivers are provided with output devices that Please make sure the proper drivers are using these ports.			
LPR	Some network with LPR proto	e network devices do not work with TC .PR protocol.			with TCP/IP and only
	Host name or IP address		The hos to the o	st name utput de	or IP address assigned evice (required).
	Printer/ queue name	•	Depenc can eith PR1 , or print qu commo	ling on t er be th it can b eue. Se n printer	he output device, this e printer name, such as e the path to a UNIX e FTP listing above for names.
FTP	Output devices that connect directly to a network may support FTP protocol. This allows the RIPed output file be sent to the output device via FTP.				y to a network may he RIPed output file to P.
	Host name or IP address	Tł th	ne host r e output	name or device	IP address assigned to (required).
	Printer/ queue name	De ei or qu	epending ther be t it can b ueue. Co	g on the he printe e the pa ommon p	output device, this can er name, such as pr1 , th to a UNIX print printer names include:
		HI EX	P JetDir X	ect	raw

HP JetDirect EX Plus 3	raw1, raw2, raw3
HP JetDirect 600N	Port1
Intel Netport Express 10/100	LPT1_PASSTHRU
Intel Netport Express Pro	LPT1_PASSTHRU, LPT2_PASSTHRU, COM1_PASSTHRU
Axis	pr1, pr2, pr3
Linksys	P1, P2, P3
Hawking	[p1,]p2,]p3

FILE The File port allows you to save the output data as a file. The following settings are available:

	Prompt for file path for each file	If checked, you will be prompted to provide a filename for the output file when each job is saved to a file.			
	Use custom extension	If checked, enter the file extension you want to use for the output file in the space provided.			
	Default Location	The default folder in which output files will be placed. Click Browse to select a folder.			
SCSI	Use this port if your output device supports SCSI connection.				
Folder	Outputs to a file in the specified folder using a naming convention specific to the output device.				
COM Serial communicutters.		nications port. This port is only supported by			
	In addition to th second, data bi flow control, the the following wi	to the standard serial port controls for bits per ta bits, parity, stop bits and hardware/software I, there are checkboxes which enable/disable g wires:			
	DTR	Data Terminal Ready			
DSR Dat		Data Set Ready			
	RTS	Request To Send			
	стѕ	Clear To Send			
	DCD	Data Carrier Detect			

Automatic Nesting Tab 🙀

The Automatic Nesting tab allows you to set the automatic nesting options for the software.

See "Nesting Jobs" page 282 for details.

Working with Jobs

Jobs can be added, deleted or have their properties changed while they are in the Production Manager queue.

Adding New Jobs

Jobs can be sent to the software in a number of different ways.

Adding Jobs from a File

To add a file as a new job:

- 1. Select the setup you want to use to print the file.
- 2. From the File menu, select Add Job.
- 3. Select the file to be added and click **Open**.

See Appendix A for the list of supported file types.

Dragging a File into Production Manager

To specify the setup to be used, drag the file onto the appropriate setup icon in the setup area. The job will be assigned a status of **Holding**.

Selecting Jobs

To select a job, click on its listing.

Multiple jobs can be selected using the standard Windows **CTRL** and **SHIFT** methods:

- Hold the CTRL key to select multiple individual jobs.
- Hold the SHIFT key to select a range of jobs by clicking on the first and last jobs in the range.

To select all the jobs, from the Edit menu select Select All.

Saving Jobs

Jobs can be saved as a native file or original format.

To save a job:

- 1. Select the job file you want to save in the Production Manager window.
- 2. From the **File** menu, select **Save as** or click on the **Save as** command button.
- 3. Enter the file name and select the file format (Native or Original) and click **Save**.

Deleting Jobs

To delete a job, do one of the following:

- Press the Delete or Backspace key on your keyboard.
- Select the job and from the Edit menu, select Delete.
- Select the job, then click on the **Delete** button in the toolbar.
- Right-click the job, then select **Delete** from the context menu.

Setting Job Properties

The Job Properties dialog allows you to edit a large number of settings that control how a job will be output.

See "Setting Job Properties" page 259 for details.

Processing Jobs

Once the server receives a job, it can be RIPed and printed.

Moving jobs to a Different Output Device

To move a job to a different output device setup, do one of the following:

- Select the job and select **Move** from the **File** menu, then select the new setup and click **OK**.
- Click and drag the job onto the icon for the new output device's setup in the Setup Pane.

RIPing Jobs

To RIP a job, do one of the following:

- Select the job and from the File menu, select RIP.
- Drag the job into the RIP Queue with the mouse. Once a job is moved into the RIP Queue, it will automatically be RIPed if it has not been RIPed previously.
- Right-click the job and select **RIP** from the context menu.

Jobs in the RIP Queue will process in the order of the Job Priority setting in their Job Properties. When multiple jobs with the same priority are waiting in the queue, the job that was received first will process first.

Printing Jobs

To print a job, do one of the following:

- Select the job and from the File menu, select Print.
- Right-click the job and select **Print** from the context menu.
- Drag the job into the Print Queue with the mouse. Once a job is moved into the Print Queue it will be automatically be RIPed if it has not been RIPed already. It will then automatically be printed on the appropriate device.

Jobs in the Print Queue will process in the order of the Job Priority setting in their Job Properties. When multiple jobs with the same priority

are waiting in the queue, the job that was received first will process first.

Aborting the Processing of a Job

To abort the processing of a job while it is being RIPed or printed, do one of the following:

- Select the job and from the File menu, select Abort.
- Select the job, then click on the **Abort** button in the toolbar.
- Right-click the job, then select **Abort** from the context menu.
- Drag the job back into the Hold Queue with the mouse.

If a job is aborted while being RIPed, its status is set to Aborted. It will need to be RIPed again before it can be printed.

If a job is aborted while being printed, its print status freezes at 0%.

Outputting Test Jobs

The software allows you to output print and/or contour cut test jobs to appropriate output devices.

Outputting a Test Print Job

To print a test job:

- 4. Select the setup you want to send the test job to.
- 5. From the Setup menu, select Test Print.

Outputting a Test Cut Job

To output a test cut job:

- 1. Select the setup you want to send the test job to.
- 2. From the Setup menu, select Test Cut.

Using RIP Logs

Each time a job is RIPed, an entry for that job is added to the RIP Log for that output device. The RIP Log entry lists the relevant details about the job: where it came from, its basic characteristics, what job properties were set, and the RIP time.

Viewing RIP Logs

To view the rip log for a given output device:

- 1. Select the setup icon for the output device.
- 2. From the View menu, select View RIP Log.

The RIP Log is formatted as an HTML file, and displays in the default browser for the operating system.

Clearing RIP Logs

To clear out the rip log for a given output device:

- 1. Select the setup icon for the output device.
- 2. From the View menu, select Clear RIP Log.

Setting Job Properties

The Job Properties dialog allows you to edit a large number of settings that control how a job will be output.

Accessing the Job Properties Dialog

To access the Job Properties dialog, select the job and do one of the following:

- Double-click on the job.
- From the File menu, select Job Properties.
- Right-click on the job and select Job Properties from the context menu.



The left side of the dialog contains the tabs on which the job properties can be set. The right side contains a preview pane that displays the job as it will appear on the output medium.

Setting the Preview Pane View

Select one of the three available views from the list at the top of the preview pane:

 Page preview
 Displays each page of the job scaled to fill the preview area.

 If there is more than one page in the job, a list of the page numbers will appear above the preview, allowing you to select the page to display.

> Selected automatically when the Workflow, Color Management, Printer Options, Cut, or Color Adjustment tab is selected.

Layout Displays the job as it will appear on the output medium. The preview is scaled so that the output medium fills the preview area.

Selected automatically when the **Layout**, **Labels**, or **Separations** tab is selected.

Displays the job with the outlines of the tiles that it will be broken up into superimposed

Selected automatically when the Tiling tab







Setting Default Job Properties

over the image.

is selected.

To make the current job properties the default settings for all new jobs that are added to this setup, click **Set Default**. You will be asked to confirm the change in the default settings.

Setting Job Properties

Different tabs within the Job Properties dialog let you set layout options, tiling/paneling options, color calibration options, color adjustment options and labels.

The exact number of tabs and the settings on those tabs will vary depending on the type of job and output device selected, as well as the version of the software in use.

Tilina

Preview



Layout Tab



The Layout tab controls how the job will be positioned on the output medium, what size it will be, and the layout of the output.

	🗑
Media size	
53.560 x 1800.000in	
😝 53.560in 📑 🚺 1800.000in 🐳	
🚺 0.000in 💌 🛅 0.000in 💌	
0.000in 🔹 🔜 0.000in 🔹	
_ Job size	
😝 34.694in 🚊 😽 100.0% 💻	
Fit to media Proportional	
Position	₽*
🖁 📔 📑 🛄 (0.100m 📑	
Page range:	
Page nesting	តំ
	Reset

Media Size	The size of the media loaded into your output device. Select fro one of the preset sizes, or specify unique dimensions below.					
	↔ ‡		The width and height of the media			
			The margins of the printable area			
	When a set of unique dimensions is specified, it is automatically added to the list of preset sizes.					
Job Size	Choosing one of these options allows you change the output size and orientation of the page.					
	↔ ‡		The job's width and height.			
	₩ 1%		The job's width and height as a percentage of the original.			
	Fit to Media		Scales the job proportionally so that it is as large as possible while still fitting within the printable area of the output medium.			
	Proportional		When this option is selected, the height and width of the job are increased or decreased together to keep the original proportions intact.			
Position	These settings cha		ange the position of the job on the media.			
	-+₽	The botto	distance between the job and the right and om margins of the printable area.			
	₽⁺	Plac lowe outp	es the job at the specified distances from the r and right edges of the printable area of the ut medium.			

Centers the job along the width of the printable area.

Centers the job in the middle of the printable area. Only available for sheet material.



Page

The number of copies to be output.

The amount of space that will exist between the various tiles, copies, and/or nested jobs that will be output as part of the job.

If checked, you can specify the range of pages that will be output Range for a multi-page job. Format is x-y. Also accepts "," to put in multiple ranges.

Ex:	5	Prints page 5.		
	2-5	Prints pages 2, 3, 4 and 5.		

3. 5-10 Prints pages 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10.

Page Nesting

If checked, the pages, tiles and color separations of the job will automatically be nested.



Flips the selected image on the vertical axis, so that your image will be mirrored when printed.



Rotates image on the media in 90-degree increments. Click the button until you achieve the desired orientation.

Workflow Tab

The Workflow tab displays settings related to the time and order that the job will be processed in.

Job name:	CutContourMonaLisa.eps
Path:	D:\Pictures\Classics\
Setup:	Hybrid Device
After output:	Delete
Cand	
benu.	Print and contour
Priority:	Medium
Print after:	12:00:00 AM
Commenter	
Comments.	
1	<u>×</u>



After Output Sets what to do with the job after output:

Delete Removes jobs from the queue after output.

Hold Places jobs in the Hold Queue after output or at the bottom of the queue.

Archive

Saves the job after output.

Color Management Tab 🔛

The Color Management tab displays the settings related to the printing device. The layout of this tab may differ depending on the output device.

PET-G (Hi Gloss White Film)					
Standard	•				
CMYKLcLm Pig (2 bits) 🔹 720x7	20 🔽 DPI				
FMXPress Sc	reen				
Enhance dither quality					
Perform color correction					
Output profile: None	•				
	Properties				
	Advanced				
Color management system: Automatic	•				
Linearization table: None					
	Ink Limits				
Use color mapping	Color Mapping				
ICC profile not calibrated	Color Profiler				

Media Select the media type the output will be printed on.

Remove Removes the selected custom media.

Print modeSelect the print quality for the output. This setting will vary for
each type of printer.

Color Mode Select the color mode that matches the inks set in the printer.

СМҮК	The image will be printed using a combination of cyan, magenta, yellow and black inks.
СМҮ	The image will be printed using cyan, magenta and yellow inks. All black will be CMY process black.
Grayscale	The image will be printed using black ink only, producing a black and white image with shades of gray.

	CMYKLcLm		CMYK plus Light Cyan and Light Magenta inks. This color mode provides smoother gradations between lighter shades of colors.		
	CMYKOrGr		CMYK plus Orange and Green inks. This color mode provides truer orange and green colors than CMYK alone can produce.		
	CMYKLcLmOrGr CMYKLcLmMcMm		CMYK plus Light Cyan, Light Magenta, Orange and Green inks.		
			CMYK plus Light Cyan, Light Magenta, Medium Cyan and Medium Magenta inks.		
	CMYKMcMmOr	Gr	CMYK plus Medium Cyan, Medium Magenta, Orange and Green inks.		
	+Piç	3	Pigment-based ink.		
	+Dy	е	Dye-based ink.		
	+2B +8B	it it	Indicates degrees of variable dot size.		
	+ va	riable-dot			
Resolution	Select the output resolution. A higher DPI value improves the resolution of the job, but slows down the output.				
Dither type	Select the dithering for the output.				
	Dither Type is the pattern in which the individual dots that make an image are applied to the media. Each dither type has advantages in terms of quality and RIP speed. The default dither type is usually the best setting for your machine.				
	ering options to optimize your sed are in tradeoff, with KF Jality and the LX Diffusion or processing times.				
	The available patterns (in descending order of quality) are:				
	KF Diffusion This is an en diffusion met (5-6 times m the highest o printers.		nhanced version of the error ethod. While it takes longer to RIP nore than FMXPress), it provides detail and contrast for most inkjet		
	Error Diffusion	This method p The enhanced intensive proc FMXPress), a using this met the available	broduces high-quality images. d image quality requires essing (3-4 times more than and the time it takes to RIP a file thod is the second longest of options.		



	Random Diffusion	A balance between image quality and RIP time. It takes 2-3 times longer than FMXPress.	
	FMXPress	The default diffusion method. It's the fastest in terms of RIP time and is suitable for most prints.	
	LX Diffusion	A faster option as far as RIP times are concerned. It's a good choice for large prints that will be viewed from a considerable distance.	
	Angled Screen	Designed for use with thermal printers to produce vibrant, saturated colors. This is also used to produce screen print positives. Click Screen to set advanced options. See "Setting Dither Options for Angled Screens" page 279 for details.	
Enhance Dither Quality	If this option is checked, the software will use an advanced algorithm for dithering that produces better results than the default algorithm, but takes more than twice as long to RIP.		
Perform color correction	Checking this option activates the color correction settings. If this setting is not checked, incoming jobs are assumed to have already color corrected in the design application.		
	If color correction profile, instead measurements inks will not be	on is off, the software will use a generic CMYK of a profile generated from actual color of output from the device. Orange and green used.	
ICC output profile	Once the image is in a neutral color space, the output profile is used to convert the image into the color space of the output device.		
	Select the ICC media, resolution	profile that matches the combination of ink, n, and dither type of your output device.	
	To add an ICC output profile from another source, select Add from the list of available profiles.		
Advanced	Click to set advanced color correction properties. See "Setting Advanced Color Correction Properties" page 276.		
Color Management	This setting determines the color management system that will be used to output the job.		
System	If you are using ICC profiles from PPS 3 that contain light or medium inks (ex: CMYKLcLm) you can use either color management system. If you use Microsoft ICM, the light and medium channels will not be read from the ICC, and will be computed based on formulas.		
	If you are using ICC profiles from PPS 3 that contain orange and green inks, you need to use the Scanvec Amiable CMS.		
	Automatic	The software will choose one which color management system to use.	
	Microsoft ICM 2.0	The software will use the Microsoft Image Color Management 2.0 API.	



Scanvec Amiable CMS The software will use the Scanvec Amiable Color Management System.

Linearization Table Select the linearization table to use.

Ink Limits

Click to set the ink limits for the output device.

-Ink limits				×
Cyan:	100 -	Light Cyan:	100	
Magenta:	100 🔹	Light Magenta:	100	
Yellow:	100 💌			
Black:	100			
		OK	Ca	ancel

Set the ink limit for each color of ink to the maximum percent coverage that the device can output without causing bleeding or drying issues, then click **OK**.

- Use Color Check to print spot colors based on settings in global and custom color mapping. Click Color Mapping to set custom color mapping options.
- **Color Profiler** Launches the Color Profiler application to allow you to generate linearization tables and ICC profiles. See *Color Profiler User Manual* for details.



Print Options Tab

The Print Options tab displays settings related to the selected output device.

The options displayed may vary depending on your output device.

2 5 8 8 7 8 5 5 9
Print direction: Bidirectional
Page spacing: 10 mm
Overprint: 1
Dry time: None
Cut sheet after printing 🔲 Print crop mark
Advance after print
Advanced
Restore Defaults

Enable driver options	Allows you to use the available driver options for your output device. When driver options are enabled, you can set special options from within the driver options dialog. When driver options are disabled, the printer's own settings will be used.
Overprint	Number of times you would like the printer to print over the same area. This setting increases the number of ink layers placed on the media.
Page Spacing	The amount of space between each separate job.
Dry Time	This is the amount of time the printer waits after it has completed printing, allowing the ink to dry.
Print Direction	Direction the print heads move when printing. In Bi-directional mode the print cartridges print from left to right, then from right to left. In unidirectional mode, the cartridges print from right to left only. Bi-directional mode prints faster, but unidirectional mode usually produces a better quality print.
Media feed calibration	If checked, the printer will use the value provided to compensate for variations in feed rates during the output process. This provides more accurate output.
Cut sheet after printing	Cuts the media after the print is complete. If a drying time has been set, the media will be cut after the dry time is finished.
Advance after print	If checked, the media will feed past the heads and remain there at the end of the job.
Restore Defaults	Click to return all settings on the tab to their default values.

Cut Tab

y

The Cut tab is only visible for jobs being output on a hybrid device or cutter. It allows you to specify settings related to cutting.

2 🖌 🔛	7 🛄 💽 📑 😂 🖢
Resolution: 1016 Passes: 1	in steps/in
Advance after plot	
🗖 Send arc commands	
🗖 Knife offset:	0.020in
Packet size:	8 📻 KB
Curve quality	0.001in
	Cutter Options Reset

Resolution	Set the resolution of your cutting device. The default value is already set for optimal results. You should not change this value unless you are experiencing problems with your output (output size not matching the size it was designed).		
Passes	Specify how many times the blade will move over each line.		
Advance after plot	Check to advance the media after output and reset the origin.		
Send arc commands	Activates the device's internal curve handling.		
Knife offset	 Check to enter custom values for knife offset. You should only change this value if you are using a pen plotter as a cutting device. 		
Packet size	 Check to specify the packet size sent to the device. This setting applies to a limited number of cutters and should not be changed unless your cutter requires it. 		
Curve quality	Determines the precision of the curves by setting the maximum space allowed between the curve and the line. Higher quality requires more lines, resulting in increased plot file size and cutting time.		
	Higher quality Lower quality		

The default is already set for optimal results.

Cutter Displays the Cutter Driver Options dialog. Options

Reset Restores the default settings.

Tile Tab



The tiling feature of the software allows you to split a print job up into a number of smaller tiles that are then output separately. This can be used to produce a larger job than a device is capable of outputting in one piece.

For details on tiling jobs, see "Tiling Jobs" page 285.

•

Labels and Marks Tab

You may choose to print crop marks, and information about the job along with any notes that you enter.

] 🔂	
Color:	Black
Width:	0.500in
🔲 Print la	bels
Position:	Top 🔽 🚺 12 😴 points
Font:	Helvetica
Printer Resolu Resolu ICC ou Tite nu Overla Notes:	reame M Job name, size and type tion V Ditket type plat profile P Stating time of RIP mber P Page number p Number of copies
Print mark	S None
Tile ov	erlap lines
Print c	olor bands op 🗹 Right 🔽 Left 💌 Bottom

Color	Select the ink that will be used to print labels and marks.
-------	---

Width Sets the width of the labels.

Print Label This option must be checked to have access to label printing options.

Position	Select where to print labels relative to the job.	
Font and Size	Allows you to select a font and font size.	
Printer Name	Prints your printer name on printout.	
Resolution	Prints the resolutions settings on printout.	



	ICC output Profile	Prints the ICC output profile used on the printout.	
	Tile Number	Prints the tile row and column number.	
	Overlap	Prints the overlap distance between tiles.	
	Job name, size and type	Prints the job name size and type on the printout.	
	Dither type	Print the selected dither type on the printout.	
	Starting time of RIP	Prints the time that the RIP process started on printout.	
	Page number	Prints the page number for a multiple page file.	
	Number of Copies	Prints the number of copies made on printout.	
	Note	Allows you to print a text note on printout.	
Print Marks	Allows you to se Only the cro appear in the	lect type of crop marks to be used on printout. p mark supported by the output device will e list.	
	None	No print marks.	
	Vertical / Mark i	Alignment marks will be printed along the right- nand vertical edge of the ob, so that the job can	

Horizontal Alignment marks will be printed along the lower horizontal edge of the job, so that the job can be aligned in a cutter for virtual hybrid output.

be aligned in a cutter for virtual hybrid output.

VerticalAlignment marks will be
printed outside theMarkcorners on the right-hand
vertical edge of the job,
so that the job can be
aligned in a cutter for
virtual hybrid output.





Horizontal Corner Mark	Alignment marks will be printed outside the corners on the lower horizontal edge of the job, so that the job can be aligned in a cutter for virtual hybrid output.	
Gerber Edge	Registration mark for virtual hybrid jobs using Gerber cutters.	
Gerber Edge Center	Registration mark for virtual hybrid jobs using Gerber cutters.	1
Fargo Impressa	Registration mark for hybrid jobs using Fargo Impressa cutters.	
Mimaki Mark	Registration mark for virtual hybrid jobs using Mimaki EX cutters.	
OPOS Mark	Registration mark for virtual hybrid jobs using Summagraphics cutters.	
Crop Marks	Crop marks will be printed at the corners of the job to allow the job.	e



Standard Marks	Standard marks intended for aligning color separations. Automatically turned on whenever color separations are output.	
Swatch	Color swatches for each color of ink will be printed around the job.	
Overlap Marks	Overlap marks will be printed, indicating how the tiles of a tiled job should overlap.	Ē
Tonal Scale	Color swatches containing blended CMY colors and a gray scale will be printed around the job.	
Margin	Marks will be printed at the corners of the job indicating its outside margins.	•
Border	A border will be printed around the outside edge of the job.	

Tile overlap
linesCheck to print lines on tiles indicating
where the edge of the overlap is. These
can then be used to align the tiles.



٠



Print color bands Check to print color bands at the positions selected.



Color Adjust Tab



The Color tab provides some basic tools to manually adjust the output color. Move the slider to the left or right to decrease or increase respectively the amount of that color in the output.

The **I** slider allows you to quickly adjust all color channels as a group.

The 🝚 slider adjusts the contrast of the image.

Check **Preview** to see the changes in your color settings reflected in the preview pane.

Click **Reset** to restore the values and settings to their original states.





Separations Tab

The Separations tab contains a number of options related to printing color separations.

2 🔂 🔂	🖳 🛄 💽		3
Print as separatio	200		
Print separations	in color		
Channel	Print as	Angle	Frequ
🗹 Cyan	Cyan	105.0	55.000
🗹 Magenta	Magenta	75.000	55.000
Vellow	Yellow	90.000	55.000
🗹 Black	Black	45.000	55.000
🗹 Light Cyan	Light Cyan	75.000	55.000
🗹 Light Magenta	Light Magenta	105.0	55.000
✓ Print spot colors a	as process		Edit
Shape: Diamond	-		
Use accurate scr	eens		
Use accurate scr	eens		
🔲 Use accurate scr	eens		
Use accurate scr	eens		
Use accurate scr	eens		

Print as separations	Check to print each color plane separately.			
	To print separations for certain colors only, clear the checkboxes for the colors you do not want to print.			
Print separations in color	Check to make each process color separation print in the appropriate color of ink. If this option is not selected, all process color separations will print in black.			
	Separations for spot colors will always print in black.			
Print spot colors as process	Check to convert spot colors to their best process color approximations and include them in the process color separations.			
	If this box is not checked, and your device supports spot colors, each spot color will be printed as an individual separation.			

If you have selected the Angled Screen dither type, you can edit the dithering options for each color from the Separations tab. See "Setting Dither Options for Angled Screens" page 279 for details.

Adding New Media Types to a Device

The software allows you to add new media types to the list of media types for a given make and model of output device. The new media type will only appear for that make and model of device, not for all devices.

To add a new media type:

- 1. Select a setup for the device you want to create a new media type for.
- 2. From the Setup menu, select Default Job Properties.
- 3. Select the Color Management tab.
- 4. From the Media Type list, select Add Media.

				×
Name:				
Driver	Jptions	UK	Cancel	

- Enter a Name for the new media type. The name can be up to 32 characters long, and may not contain any wild card characters (#, * or ?).
- 6. If desired, click **Driver Options** to set the default driver options that will be used with this media type.
- 7. Click OK.

Removing Media Types

To remove a media type that has been added for a certain output device, click **Remove**. The default media types defined by the software cannot be removed.

Setting Advanced Color Correction Properties

To edit the advanced color correction properties for a job:

- 1. Open the job properties for that job.
- 2. Select the Color Management tab.
- 3. Click on the **Advanced** button.



		×
- Input ICC	Profiles	1
CMYK:	Default CMYK	
RGB:	Default RGB	
Gray:	Default CMYK.	
	▼ Use embedded ICC profile	
Rendering	g Intent	7
Bitmap:	Perceptual Pure Hue	
Vector:	Relative colorimetric Pure Hue	
Text	Relative colorimetric Pure Hue	
Gradient	Relative colorimetric Pure Hue	
L		1
	Reset OK Cancel	

Setting ICC Input Profiles

Select the ICC input profile to use to convert the image into a neutral color space. There are three types of ICC input profiles that can be specified.

- **CMYK** The CMYK input profile applies to all elements of a job that are in CMYK color mode. If your image is in CMYK color mode, then your file was previously separated for output to a specific output device. Whenever is possible, use the profile used for separation in your design application as the CMYK input profile. Try using similar profiles for common ink sets (such as CMYK SWOP or High End SWOP) if you don't have the matching profile.
- **RGB** The RGB ICC input profile applies to all elements of a job that are in RGB color mode. An RGB input profile can be for either a monitor or a scanner. If you scanned your image without color correcting it, it is recommended to use the scanner profile as a RGB input profile. If you have done any on-screen color correction, you should select your monitor profile as a RGB input profile.
- **Gray** The Gray ICC input profile applies to all elements of a job that are in grayscale color mode. This may refer to either a grayscale scanner or a grayscale monitor.

Check **Use embedded ICC profile** to force the RIP to use the input ICC profile embedded in the file.

Adding ICC Profiles from Other Sources

To add an ICC input profile from another source, choose **Add** from the combo box.

Setting Rendering Intents

Rendering intent specifies how a color space from the input file gets mapped to the color space of the output device.

For details on setting rendering intents, see "Selecting Rendering Intents" page 210.


Setting Dither Options for Angled Screens

The Angled Screens dialog displays the dither options that are available for angled screens. To access the dialog, select **Angled screen** as your dithering option in the Printer tab of the Job Properties dialog, and click on the **Screen** button.

			×
Channel	Angle	Frequency	
Cyan	105.00	55.00	
Magenta	75.00	55.00	
Yellow	90.00 45.00	55.00	
Light Evan	45.00 75.00	55.00	
Light Magenta	105.00	55.00	
			Edit
Shape: Diamond	-		
Use accurate screens			
Save preset Load preset	Reset	OK	Cancel

The following options are available:

Screen Angle and Frequency To set the screen angle and frequency for a color channel, select the channel in the list and click **Edit**.

			×
Channel:	Cyan		
Angle:	105.000*	<u>.</u>	
Frequency-			
55.000	•	lines/in	
🔽 Apply to	all		
		ОК	Cancel

Enter the angle and frequency desired, then click **OK**. Check **Apply to All** to apply the new frequency to all color channels.

Shape The shape of the dots that make up the halftone screen. For best results, choose either **Diamond** or **Ellipse**.

Cosine Dot







Use If checked, a special algorithm is used that produces highly Accurate accurate halftones, but is computationally expensive. Screens

Saving Screen Options to a Presets File

To save the current screen option settings to a file:

1. Check that the current settings are correct.

2. Click Save preset.

3. Specify the file name and location and click OK.

Loading the Presets from a File

To load the screen option presets from a file:

- Click Load preset. 1.
- 2 Specify the file name and location and click OK.

Setting Cutter Driver Options

The Cutter Driver Options allow you to control the parameters of operation of your output device such as cut speed, pressure and execute common tasks (roll forward, roll backward, go to origin) from your computer.

×	×	×
Before Job After Job Macro	Before Job After Job Macro	Before Job After Job Macro
Dut Fast	Foil Cut	
Pounce	IZ FoiLCut	
Pressure 50 🚎 50-300		
✓ Speed 60 ÷ 30-75		
Acceleration 1.5 🚔 1.0-5.0		
VSEDAS1 5: Debte Save. Revel OK Cancel / 227	PG. 2707 Save. Read 0K Carel /277	OK Careed 7999
Defeue leh Teh	Affer Job Tob	Maawa Tab

Before Job Tab

^ - - - - -

After Job Tab

Macro Tab

Ð The settings available in the Cutter Driver Options vary according to your output device.

Each command has a checkbox to enable or disable it. When enabled, you can change the value, and the command will be sent to the output device overriding the settings in the output device. When the option is unchecked, the settings from the output device are used.

Save	Saves the changes you made as a new command.
Delete	Deletes the selected command from the list (you can only delete commands that were added using the save command).
Reset	Reverts all settings to its default settings (any custom commands added by the user will be deleted).
Before Job	Defines commands that will be sent before the job is processed.
Cut Fast / Medium / Slow / None	Defines a series of settings for fast, medium and slow cutting speeds. Select None if you want to use all settings from the output device.
Pressure / Force	Defines the pressure of the knife.
Speed	Defines the traveling speed of the head.



Tool	Defines the tool when several tools are available or switch between cut and plot.
After Job	Defines commands that will be sent after the job is processed.
Cut Media / Auto Cut	Specify if the media will be cut after cutting or plotting.
Macro	Allows you to execute common tasks that you are usually required to do from the cutter's control panel.
Initialize	Initializes the output device.
Roll Forward /Backward	Advances or rolls back the media.
Go to origin	Moves the head to the origin.

Make sure nobody is around the output device when sending the macros, since the cutter may move and injure the operator.

Nesting Jobs

Production Manager has the ability to nest jobs together in order to minimize the amount of material needed to output the jobs. Nesting reorganizes the jobs on the output medium so that they line up across the media width and are packed into as compact an area as possible.



Jobs must be in the same queue in order to be nested together, and must share the same output device and resolution.

Nesting Jobs Manually

To nest jobs:

- 1. Select the jobs.
- 2. From the File menu, select Nest Jobs.

If a single job is selected, its pages will be nested.

Un-Nesting Jobs

To separate a set of nested jobs into its component jobs:

- 1. Select the set of nested jobs.
- 2. From the File menu, select Unnest Jobs.

Using Automatic Nesting

Production Manager can be set to automatically nest jobs as they are added to the Hold Queue.

To set up automatic nesting, from the **Setup** menu select **Setup Properties**, then select the **Automatic Nesting** tab.

	2
S 🛛 🐺 🌾 🗎	
Automatic job nesting	
Vumber of jobs:	5 🛨
Number of minutes:	30 🖶
Percent coverage:	50 🖶
🗖 Daily at:	12:00:00 AM
Automatic rotate image w	vhen nesting
Automatic rotate image w	when nesting
Automatic rotate image w	when mesting
Automatic rotate image w	nhen nesting
Automatic rotate image w	vhen nesting
Automatic rotate image w	ihen nesting
Automatic rotate image w	hen nesting Reset
Automatic rotate image w	when mesting

Automatic job nesting Automatically nests jobs using one or more of the criteria specified below. This allows you to work more efficiently by grouping their jobs for output. You can add several jobs into the queue and nest them into one job.

Number of jobs	Select this option to automatically nest jobs once the specified number of jobs has accumulated in the queue.
Number of minutes	Select this option to automatically nest jobs once the specified number of minutes has passed.



	Percent coverage	Select this option to automatically nest jobs once the specified percentage of the media has been covered.					
	Daily at	Select this option to automatically nest job once a day at the specified time.					
Automatic rotate image when nesting	If checked, the nested so that	e images may automatically be rotated when t less of the output medium will be used up.					

Set **Number of jobs** to **1** to automatically nest pages, tiles and separations.

Nesting Pages, Tiles and Separations

The software is able to nest the pages of a multi-page job so that they line up across the width of the output medium and take up less material.

To nest the pages of a multipage job:

- On the Layout tab of the Job Properties dialog for the job, check Page Nesting.
- 4. Select the job.
- 5. From the **File** menu, select **Nest**.

1						
	Arrestan Arresta		-			
		inter Record Record	n 220 Press	10-0-0-0 20-0-0-0 4-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-		
	an ana	Poters Sources			andala Carlos	
	i and	Contraction of the Contraction o		Angeler Angeler		
	1944-1945 1945-1945 1945-1945 1945-1945	2000 	and Read			i soon Sin na
	-					-

Tiling and Cropping Jobs



The tiling feature of the software allows you to split a print job up into a number of smaller tiles that are then output separately.

If a job is larger than the output medium, it is automatically tiled into pieces small enough to output.

All tiling is done from the **Tile** tab of the Job Properties dialog. To access the tiling features:

- 1. Select the job.
- 2. From the File menu, select Job Properties.
- 3. Select the **Tile** tab.

The following settings are available:

Panel Size The panel is the part of the job that will be split up into tiles and output by the software. If the panel is reduced in size so that it does not cover the entire job, only the parts covered by the panel will be output.



Shows the width and height of the panel. To adjust, enter a number or use the arrows.



The size of the margin. The margin is the part of the panel that extends outside of the boundaries of the job.

SelectedSelects which tile's width and height are displayed in the fieldsTilebelow.



Shows the width and height of the selected tile. To adjust, enter a number or use the arrows.

Print If checked, the selected tile will be output with the rest of the job. If cleared, the tile is marked with a mesh overlay in the preview pane, and will not be output.

All Tiles These settings apply to all tiles and help you quickly set up automatic tiles, of equal size.

Selecting this option divides the job vertically into the number of columns specified. Each column will be of equal width.

Selecting this option divides the job into the number of rows specified. All rows will be of equal height.

Here I fyou know that you want tiles of a certain size, enter the values for the width and height of the tiles here. All tiles will be changed to the specified size.

Sets the amount of overlap between tiles. Enter a negative number to create an offset between tiles.

PrintOutputs a tile map to aid in assembly of the finished job. SeeTilemap"Printing a Tile Map" page 289 for details.

Reset The reset button will restore the original values and settings.

Dividing a Job Into Tiles

The job starts as a single large tile that covers the entire job. This tile is selected by default.

To divide the job into multiple tiles, reduce the width and/or height of the first tile using the $\stackrel{\text{tile}}{=}$ and $\stackrel{\text{tile}}{=}$ fields in the **Selected Tile** section. New tiles will automatically be created to cover the exposed areas of the job.

For instance, to divide a 30x25 job into two vertical tiles, set the 렆 field to **15**, reducing the size of the first tile to 15x25. A second 15x25 tile will automatically be created.

Dividing a Job into Uniform Rows and Columns of Tiles

To divide the job into a specified number of uniform rows and columns of tiles:

- 1. Check 12 or 12 to tile the job vertically or horizontally.
- 2. Enter the number of columns of tiles in the 12 field.
- 3. Enter the number of rows of tiles in the $\frac{1}{2}$ field.
- 4. Set the amount of overlap between the tiles in the 🗰 field.



Dividing a Job into Uniform Tiles of a Specified Size

To divide the job into uniform tiles of a specified size:

- Check + and to set all tiles in the job to be of the specified size.
- 2. Set the 🖶 and 主 fields to the width and height desired for the tiles.
- Set the amount of overlap between the tiles in the in the interval.



If the specified tiles do not cover the job evenly, the tiles at the top and right edges will be made small enough to fit in the gap.

Selecting a Tile

To select a tile, either click on the tile in the preview pane, or select the tile using the \square field in the **Selected Tile** section of the Tile tab.

Editing Tiles

To edit the size of the selected tile, change the values in the $\stackrel{\text{\tiny H}}{\longleftrightarrow}$ and $\stackrel{\text{\scriptsize I}}{\Longrightarrow}$ fields.

You can also resize tiles by dragging their edges in the Preview Pane.



Click and drag to resize

If any of the **All Tiles** checkboxes are checked, the and fields may be disabled. In this case, the fields have been overridden in order to keep all tiles uniform. The tiles will not be editable using the Preview Pane either.

If you drag the edges of the panel over so that part of the job is exposed, a new tile will be created to cover the exposed area of the job. The exception to this is if you resize the panel using the cropping handles (see "Cropping a Job" page 290 for details).



Click and drag the edge of the panel to add another tile.

Preventing a Tile From Being Output

To prevent a tile from being output with the rest of the job:

- Double-click on the tile in the preview pane.
- Right-click on the tile in the preview pane.
- Select the tile in the **Selected Tile** section of the Tile tab and clear the **Print** checkbox.

Non-printing tiles are marked with a hash pattern.



To make a non-printing tile printable again:

- Double-click or right-click the tile again to toggle it back on.
- Select the tile in the **Selected Tile** section of the Tile tab and check the **Print** checkbox.

One tile in each job must always remain printable. If you try to set all tiles to non-printing, one of the tiles will become printable again.

Printing a Tile Map

The software can print out a map showing how the job will be broken up into tiles. Each tile has the tile number printed within its outline.



To print a tile map:

1. Click the **Print Tile Map** button on the **Tile** tab.



			×
Send Tilemap:	Acrobat Distiller		•
	OK	Cancel]

- 2. Select the printer you want to use to print the tile map.
- If you would like to send the tile map to a desktop or network printer, first create a setup for that printer, then select that setup here.
- 3. Click OK.

Cropping a Job

To crop out part of a job so that it will not be output:

- 1. Open the Job Properties dialog for the job.
- Select the Tiling Preview view of the job.
- Drag the red cropping handles so that the unwanted parts of the job are cropped out.

Cropped-out areas of the job will not be output.



Cropping Handles



Cropped-Out Area

You can also crop a job by reducing the panel size using the 렆, 🛟 and 😳 fields in the **Panel Size** section of the **Tile** tab.

Removing All Tiling and Cropping

To remove all tiling and cropping and make the job one piece again, click on the **Reset** button.

If the job is bigger than the media, it will still be tiled to fit the media.

Using Output Size Compensation

Output Size Compensation allows you to measure slight variations in output size and compensate for them.

To use Output Size Compensation with a given setup:

- 1. Select the output device setup.
- 2. From the Setup menu, select Output Size Compensation.

			×
Setup:	CMYK Printer		
– Measurem	ent		
	Test size	Measured size	Compensation factor
Width:	12.000000in	12.000000in 🔹	1.000000
Length:	12.000000in 💉	12.000000in 🔹	1.000000
	Test Print		
🗖 Enable	output size compensa	ition	OK Cancel

- 3. Enter the **Width** and **Length** of the test print you want to output under **Test size**. For best results, the print should be as large as possible while still fitting onto the output medium.
- 4. Click Test Print.
- 5. Measure the actual size of the test print and enter the **Width** and **Length** of the test print under **Measured size**.
 - The software automatically calculates the compensation factors that will scale the output size to compensate for the difference between the test size and the measured size.
- Check Enable output size compensation to automatically scale all future output from this setup using the compensation factors derived from your measurements.
- 7. Click OK.

You must set up Output Size Compensation separately for each output device setup. Output size compensation does not affect the size of the job as it appears in the Job Properties dialog.

Appendix A - ASCII Code

Code	Char	Code	Char	11	Code	Char	Code	Char	Ĩ	Code	Char	1	Code	Char	Code	Char
32		64	@	[96	`	128	€		160			192	À	224	à
33	!	65	Α		97	а	129			161	i		193	Á	225	á
34		66	В		98	b	130	,		162	¢		194	Â	226	â
35	#	67	С		99	С	131	f		163	£		195	Ã	227	ã
36	\$	68	D	[100	d	132	"		164	¤		196	Ä	228	ä
37	%	69	E		101	е	133			165	¥		197	Å	229	å
38	&	70	F		102	f	134	†		166	1		198	Æ	230	æ
39		71	G		103	g	135	‡		167	§		199	Ç	231	Ç
40	(72	Н		104	h	136	,		168			200	È	232	è
41)	73	I		105	i	137	‰		169	©		201	É	233	é
42	*	74	J		106	j	138	Š		170	а		202	Ê	234	ê
43	+	75	K		107	k	139	<		171	«		203	Ë	235	ë
44	,	76	L		108	Ι	140	Œ		172	٦		204	Ì	236	ì
45	-	77	Μ		109	m	141			173	-		205	ĺ	237	Í
46		78	Ν		110	n	142	Ž		174	®		206	Î	238	î
47	1	79	0		111	0	143			175	-		207	Ï	239	ï
48	0	80	Ρ		112	р	144			176	٥		208	Ð	240	ð
49	1	81	Q		113	q	145	"		177	±		209	Ñ	241	ñ
50	2	82	R		114	r	146	•		178	2		210	Ò	242	Ò
51	3	83	S		115	S	147	"		179	3		211	0	243	Ó
52	4	84	Т		116	t	148	"		180	,		212	O	244	Ô
53	5	85	U		117	u	149	•		181	μ		213	Ö	245	Õ
54	6	86	V		118	v	150	-		182	¶		214	0	246	ö
55	7	87	W		119	w	151	—		183	•		215	×	247	÷
56	8	88	X		120	X	152	~		184	5		216	ø	248	ø
57	9	89	Y		121	У	153	тм		185	1		217	Ú	249	ù
58	:	90	Z		122	z	154	Š		186	0		218	Ú	250	ú
59	;	91	[123	{	155	>	l	187	»		219	Ű	251	û
60	<	92	١		124		156	œ		188	1⁄4		220	U	252	ü
61	=	93]		125	}	157		ļ	189	1/2		221	Y	253	ý
62	>	94	^		126	~	158	ž	l	190	3/4		222	Þ	254	þ
63	?	95	_		127		159	Ϋ́		191	Ś		223	ß	255	ÿ

Appendix B - Installation

The following DLL - Dynamic Linked Libraries are installed in Windows folder

•	ctl3d32.exe	•	msinet.ocx	•	owl250f.dll

• hhupd.exe

•

•

- msvbvm50.dll
- msvcirt.dll

•

- msvcp60.dll
- vb5.dllsentinel.vxd

•

stdole2.tlb

vb5.olb

msflxgrd.ocx

mfc42.dll

mfc42u.dll

msvcrt.dll • se

sentinel.vxd is not installed in Windows NT, 2000 and XP systems

The following folders are created under the folder where the program was installed.

Archive	Used as default folder by Production Manager, when you add a job.
Borders	Contains the advanced border shapes (see page 103)
Casfonts	Contains font files in Casfont format.
Color	Contains color printer drivers.
Custom Characters	Contains the characters defined by user (see page 130).
Density	Contains density adjustment files. There are subfolders for each printer manufacturer and printer model.
Dictionaries	Contains dictionary files used by spell checker (see page 124).
Filters	Contains file import filters.
Forms	Contains the forms used in Job estimation
FSFonts	Contains font files in FSfont format.
Help	Contains Help (manual and read me) files.
ICCProfile	Contains ICC Calibration files. There are subfolders for each printer manufacturer and printer model.
Jobs	Used by Production Manager to store Job files. There are subfolders for each printer manufacturer and printer model.
OutputDrivers	Contains the CSM and DLL drivers for printers and plotters.
Plugins	Contains DLL modules used by your software.
Printers	(Not used)
Profiles	Contains the workspaces files used to define the user interface. See page 20.

Program	Contains the main modules of your program.
Samples	Contains the sample files in several formats as FS, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, etc.
Shapes	Contains the definition files for parametric shapes. See page 104.
Styles	Contains the text styles defined by user. See page 132.
Swatch	Contains the swatch tables and color libraries. See page 80.
Тетр	Contains temporary files created during processing.
Templates	Contains templates.
URWFonts	Contains font files in URW format.

Appendix C - Supported File Formats

File formats supported in design application

File Format	Extension	Import	Export
Adobe Illustrator	ai, EPS	10.0	6.0
Adobe PhotoShop	psd	6.0	4.0
AutoCAD Drawing	dwg	2000	
CASmate	SCV	6.52	6.52
Clip Art	са	4 / 5	4 / 5
CorelDRAW Drawing	cdr	8.0	
CorelDRAW Exchange Metafile	cmx	6.0	
Digital Microprocessor Plotter Language (DMPL)	plt	Note 1	
Drawing Exchange file	dxf	Note 1	Note 1
EnRoute	enr	2.3	
FlexiSIGN 5.x	fs, pd, fd, fc, fe	5.9	4 / 5
FlexiSIGN 6.x	fs	6.0	6 / 7
Flexi 7	Fs	7.0	7.0
Gerber Art Definition	gad		1.0
Hewlett Packard Graphics Language (HPGL)	hpg, hgl, plt	Note 1	Note 1
Hewlett Packard Graphics Language II (HPGL/2)	hpg, hgl, plt	Note 1	Note 1
Ikarus	ik	Note 1	
Inspire	sci	1.6	
Joint Photograph Experts Group (JPEG)	jpg	Note 1	Note 1
Kodak Flashpix	fpx	1.0	
Kodak PhotoCD	pcd	Note 1	
Macintosh Quickdraw PICT	pct	Note 1	
Microsoft Widows Metafile	wmf	Note 1	
Portable Network Graphics (PNG)	png	Note 1	Note 1



File Format	Extension	Import	Export
Portable Document Format (PDF)	pdf	1.3	
PostScript	ps, EPS, 2ps, fjb, prn	2.0	3.0
Targa	tga	2.0	2.0
Text	txt	Note 1	
Tag Image File Format (TIFF)	tif	Note 1	Note 1
Windows bitmap	Bmp	Note 1	Note 1
Zsoft PC Paintbrush	рсх	5.0	

Note 1: Version number does not exist or not available.

File formats supported in Production Manager

File Format	Extension	Import	Export
Joint Photograph Experts Group (JPEG)	jpg	Note 1	
Tag Image File Format (TIFF)	tif	Note 1	
Portable Document Format (PDF)	pdf	1.3	
PostScript	ps, EPS, 2ps, fjb, prn	3.0	
Windows bitmap	bmp	Note 1	
Native Files	prt, plt	Note 1	Note 1
Plot / Cut Job Files	job	Note 1	Note 1
Print Job Files	fjb	7.0	
Kodak PhotoCD	pcd	Note 1	

B Note 1: Version number does not exist or not available.

Appendix D - Features List

Centrol of a control		ElexiSIGN-PRO	FlexiEXPERT	FlexiSIGN	Flexil FTTFR	ElexiDESIGNER
Getting Started Navigator View x						
Navigator View x x x x x Repeat x x x x x Working with Files x x x x x Export Standard File Formats x x x x x Send to EnRoute x x x x x x Job Info x x x x x x Using DesignEditor x x x x x DesignEditor x x x x x Select Similar Objects x x x x x Auto Senalize x x x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x x x	Getting Started					1
RepeatxxxxWorking with FilesExport Standard File FormatsxxxxxSend to EnRoutexxxxxxSend to EnRoutexxxxxxJob InfoxxxxxxxJob EstimationxxxxxxxTemplatesxxxxxxxBeignEditorxxxxxxxSelect DigotsxxxxxxxSelect Digotsxx	Navigator View	x				
Working with Files x	Repeat	х	Х	Х		x
Export Standard File Formats x x x x x Send to EnRoute x x x x x Job Info x x x x x Job Estimation x x x x x Using DesignEditor x x x x x DesignEditor x x x x x Select Similar Objects x x x x x Atranging Objects x x x x x x Atto Serialize x x x x x x Distribute x x x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x x x x Distribute x x x x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x x <td< td=""><td>Working with Files</td><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td>1</td><td>T</td></td<>	Working with Files	1			1	T
Send to EnRoutexxxxxJob InfoxxxxxJob InfoxxxxxTemplatesxxxxxUsing DesignEditorxxxxxSelecting ObjectsxxxxxSelect Jobjects / ColorxxxxxSelect Job AttributexxxxxArranging ObjectsxxxxxSelect Job AttributexxxxxAtto SerializexxxxxAuto SerializexxxxxDistributexxxxxClear TransformxxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxxxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxxMoting with ShapesxxxxxCirclexxxxxArrowxxxxxPatternsxxxxxCircle LibrariesxxxxxCreate Curre Palette SwatchxxxxCreate Curre Relette Swatchx	Export Standard File Formats	х	Х	х	х	
Job InfoxxxxxJob EstimationxxxxxTemplatesxxxxxDesignEditorxxxxxSelect Similar ObjectsxxxxxSelect Similar ObjectsxxxxxSelect WithbutexxxxxArranging ObjectsxxxxxSame Width / Same HeightxxxxxMask / UnmaskxxxxxMask / UnmaskxxxxxDistributexxxxxDistributexxxxxDistributexxxxxMoking with ColorxxxxxEyedropperxxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxYatternsxxxxxxGradientsxxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxxParametric ShapexxxxxParametric ShapexxxxxBraille	Send to EnRoute	х				
Job EstimationxxxTemplatesxxVaring DesignEditorxxDesignEditorxxxSelecting ObjectsxxxSelect Similar ObjectsxxxSelect by AttributexxxArranging ObjectsxxxSame Width / Same HeightxxxAuto SerializexxxMask / UnmaskxxxMask / UnmaskxxxClear TransformxxxWorking with ColorxxxEyedropperxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxEyedropperxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxWroking with ShapesxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorxxxPatternsxxxxGradientsxxxxArrowxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric Shapexxxx <td>Job Info</td> <td>x</td> <td>х</td> <td>х</td> <td>х</td> <td>х</td>	Job Info	x	х	х	х	х
Templates x x x Using DesignEditor x x x DesignEditor x x x Selecting Objects x x x Select Similar Objects / Color x x x Select by Attribute x x x Same Width / Same Height x x x Auto Serialize x x x Same Width / Same Height x x x Auto Serialize x x x Clear Transform x x x Clear Transform x x x Eyedropper x x x Working with Color x x x Eyedropper x x x x Measure Color x x x x Create Durotone Swatch x x x x Gradients x x x	Job Estimation	x	х			x
Using DesignEditor x x x x Selecting Objects Select Simil Objects / Color x x x Select Simil Objects x x x x Select Simil Objects x x x x Arranging Objects x x x x Same Width / Same Height x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x Distribute x x x x Working with Color x x x x Working with Color x x x x Modify Color Libraries x x x x Create Duotone Swatch x x x x Create Current Palette Swatch x x x x Brailents x x x x x Patterms	Templates	x	х			x
DesignEditor x x x x Selecting Objects	Using DesignEditor				-	_
Selecting Objects Select Similar Objects / Color x x x Select by Attribute x x x x Arranging Objects Same Width / Same Height x x x Same Width / Same Height x x x x Auto Serialize x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x Distribute x x x x Clear Transform x x x x Working with Color Eyedropper x x x x Eyedropper x x x x x x Modify Color Libraries x x x x x x Create Duotone Swatch x x x x x x x Create Current Palette Swatch x x x x x x x Gradients x x x x x x x x Gradients	DesignEditor	x	х	х		x
Select Similar Objects / ColorxxxSelect by AttributexxxArranging ObjectsSame Width / Same HeightxxxAuto SerializexxxMask / UnmaskxxxMask / UnmaskxxxMask / UnmaskxxxMask / UnmaskxxxDistributexxxClear TransformxxxWorking with ColorxxxEyedropperxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxMeasure ColorxxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorxxxxPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxArrowxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxBarcodexxxxBarcodexxxxDistributexxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxStanalityxxxxGradientsxxxx <td>Selecting Objects</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>_</td>	Selecting Objects					_
Select by AttributexxxArranging ObjectsSame Width / Same HeightxxAuto SerializexxxxAuto SerializexxxxMask / UnmaskxxxxDistributexxxxDistributexxxxClear TransformxxxxWorking with ColorxxxxEyedropperxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxModify Color SwatchxxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxBring Fill/Stroke EditorxxxxPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxArrowxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxParametric ShapexxxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxxList StylesxxxxCreate Current PaleterxxxSandingxxxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalDefine Characterxxxx<	Select Similar Objects / Color	x	х			x
Arranging Objects Same Width / Same Height x Auto Serialize x x Auto Serialize x x Mask / Unmask x x Distribute x x Clear Transform x Working with Color Eyedropper X X X X Modify Color Libraries X Measure Color X Create Dutone Swatch x x x x Create Current Palette Swatch x x x x <t< td=""><td>Select by Attribute</td><td>x</td><td>х</td><td></td><td></td><td>x</td></t<>	Select by Attribute	x	х			x
Same Width / Same Height x x x x Auto Serialize x x x x Mask / Unmask x x x x Distribute x x x x Distribute x x x x Obstribute x x x x Working with Color x x x x Beging with Color x x x x Modify Color Libraries x x x x Measure Color x x x x Create Duotone Swatch x x x x Create Current Palette Swatch x x x x Brailents x x x x x Gradients x x x x x Gradients x x x x x Gradients x <	Arranging Objects					
Auto SerializexxxxMask / UnmaskxxxxDistributexxxxClear TransformxxxxWorking with ColorxxxxEyedropperXXXxModify Color LibrariesxMeasure ColorxCreate Duotone SwatchxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxCreate CUrrent Palette SwatchxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorxxxxPatternsXXxxGradientsxxxxxPatternsXxxFanXXxArrowxxxParametric ShapexxVorking with TextText Block SizexxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalSuret S	Same Width / Same Height	x				
Mask / UnmaskxxxxDistributexxxxClear TransformxxxxClear TransformxxxxWorking with ColorxxxxEyedropperxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxMeasure ColorxxxxCreate Duotone SwatchxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxSing Fill/Stroke EditorxxxxPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxWorking with ShapesxxxxCirclexxxxxArrowxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxArrowxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxxInsert SymbolxxxxInsert SymbolxxxxInsert SymbolxxxxInsert SymbolxxxxInsert Symbolxxxx <tr< td=""><td>Auto Serialize</td><td>x</td><td>х</td><td></td><td></td><td>x</td></tr<>	Auto Serialize	x	х			x
DistributexxxxClear TransformxxxxWorking with ColorEyedropperXxXXModify Color LibrariesxxxxModify Color LibrariesxxxxMeasure ColorxCreate Duotone SwatchxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsXXxxGradientsxxxxWorking with ShapesCircleXXXxFanXXxFanXXxArrowXXParametric ShapexxParametric ShapexxParametric ShapexxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxInsert SymbolxxxInsert SymbolxxxInsert SymbolxxxInsert SymbolxxxInsert SymbolxxxInsert Symbolxxx <td>Mask / Unmask</td> <td>x</td> <td>х</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>x</td>	Mask / Unmask	x	х			x
Clear TransformxImage: constraint of the system of t	Distribute	x	х			x
Working with ColorEyedropperXXXXModify Color LibrariesXIIMeasure ColorXIIICreate Duotone SwatchXIIICreate CMYK SwatchXXXXXCreate Current Palette SwatchXXXXUsing Fill/Stroke EditorXXXXPatternsXXXXGradientsXXXXWorking with ShapesXXXXCircleXXXXFanXXXXArrowXXXXParametric ShapeXXXXConvert to ShapeXXIXBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodeXXXXXUserf SymbolXXXXURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBrailing New BittrapsXXXXXCreating New BittrapsXXXX	Clear Transform	x				
EyedropperxxxxModify Color Librariesx </td <td>Working with Color</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	Working with Color					
Modify Color LibrariesxMeasure ColorxCreate Duotone SwatchxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxWorking with ShapesCirclexxxxFanxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxxConvert to ShapexxxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxxInsert SymbolxxxxLeythesxxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptional SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptional	Eyedropper	x	х	х		х
Measure ColorxCreate Duotone SwatchxxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxWorking with ShapesCirclexxxxFanxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxxConvert to ShapexxxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxxBarcodexxxxDefine CharacterxxxxItsett SyllesxxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with Bitmapsxxxx	Modify Color Libraries	x				
Create Duotone SwatchxCreate CMYK SwatchxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxGradientsxxxxxWorking with ShapesxxxxxCirclexxxxxFanxxxxxArrowxxxxxParametric ShapexxxxConvert to ShapexxxxWorking with TextxxxxText Block SizexxxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxxLest SymbolxxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxxx	Measure Color	x				
Create CMYK SwatchxxxxxCreate Current Palette SwatchxxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsxxxxGradientsxxxxGradientsxxxxWorking with ShapesCirclexxxxFanxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxxConvert to ShapexxxxWorking with TextxxxxText Block SizexxxxBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxxDefine CharacterxxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with Bitmapsxxxxx	Create Duotone Swatch	x				
Create Current Palette SwatchxxxxxUsing Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsXXXXGradientsxXXXGradientsxXXXWorking with ShapesCircleXXXXFanXXXXArrowXXXXParametric ShapeXXXXConvert to ShapeXXXXWorking with TextXXXXText Block SizeXXXXBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodeXXXXInsert SymbolXXXXURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsXXXXCreating New BitmapsXXXX	Create CMYK Swatch	x				
Using Fill/Stroke EditorPatternsxxxGradientsxxxGradientsxxxWorking with ShapesxCirclexxxFanxxxArrowxxxParametric ShapexxxParametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxLext StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxxx	Create Current Palette Swatch	x	х	х	х	x
PatternsxxxxGradientsxxxxGradientsxxxxWorking with ShapesCirclexxxxFanxxxxFanxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxLeft CharacterxxxText StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxx	Using Fill/Stroke Editor					
GradientsxxxxWorking with ShapesCircleXXXXFanXXXXFanXXXXArrowXXXXParametric ShapeXXXXConvert to ShapeXXXXWorking with TextXXXXText Block SizeXXXXBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodeXXXXDefine CharacterXXXXText StylesXXXXURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsXXXXCreating New BitmapsXXXX	Patterns	x	Х			x
Working with Shapes Circle x x x x Fan x x x x Fan x x x x Arrow x x x x Parametric Shape x x x Convert to Shape x x x Working with Text x x x Text Block Size x x x Braille Optional Optional Optional Barcode x x x Insert Symbol x x x Define Character x x x Text Styles x x x URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps x x x	Gradients	x	х	х		x
CirclexxxxFanxxxxFanxxxxArrowxxxxParametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxDefine CharacterxxxText StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxScanningxxxCreating New BitmapsxxxKataliaxxx	Working with Shapes					
FanxxxArrowxxxArrowxxxParametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxInsert SymbolxxxDefine CharacterxxxText StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxx	Circle	x	х	х		x
ArrowxxxParametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxInsert SymbolxxXxxDefine CharacterxxXxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptional SupportOptionalOptionalOptional SupportScanningxxXxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxx	Fan	x	х			x
Parametric ShapexxxConvert to ShapexxxWorking with TextxxxText Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxDefine CharacterxxxText StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxx	Arrow	x	х			x
Convert to Shape x x x Working with Text Text Block Size x x x Braille Optional Optional Optional Optional Barcode x x x x Insert Symbol x x x x Define Character x x x x Text Styles x x x x URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps x x x x Scanning x x x x	Parametric Shape	x	х			x
Working with Text Text Block Size x x x Braille Optional Optional Optional Optional Barcode x X X Insert Symbol x x X X Define Character x x x X Text Styles x x x X URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps x x x x X Scanning x x x x X Creating New Bitmaps x x x X	Convert to Shape	x	х			x
Text Block SizexxxBrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexxxxInsert SymbolxxxxDefine CharacterxxxxText StylesxxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxxx	Working with Text					•
BrailleOptionalOptionalOptionalOptionalBarcodexOptionalOptionalInsert SymbolxxxDefine CharacterxxxText StylesxxxURW Font SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalOptional SupportOptionalOptionalOptionalWorking with BitmapsxxxCreating New Bitmapsxxx	Text Block Size	x	х			x
Barcode x Image: Constraint of the symbol Insert Symbol x x Insert Symbol x x Define Character x x X x x Define Character x x X x x Text Styles x x URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional with Bitmaps X x Scanning x x X x x Creating New Bitmaps x x	Braille	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Insert Symbol x x x Insert Symbol x x x x X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X	Barcode	x				
Define Character x x x x Text Styles x x x x URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps x x x x Scanning x x x x Creating New Bitmaps x x x	Insert Symbol	x	х			x
Text Styles x x x URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps x x x x Scanning x x x x Creating New Bitmaps x x x	Define Character	x	х	х		x
URW Font Support Optional Optional Optional Optional Working with Bitmaps Scanning x x x x Creating New Bitmaps x x x x x	Text Styles	x	х	х		x
Working with Bitmaps Scanning x x x Creating New Bitmaps x x x	URW Font Support	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Scanning x x x Creating New Bitmaps x x x	Working with Bitmaps					
Creating New Bitmaps x x x	Scanning	x	х	x		x
	Creating New Bitmaps	x	х	х		

	FlexiSIGN-PRO	FlexiEXPERT	FlexiSIGN	FlexiLETTER	FlexiDESIGNER
Working with Bitmaps (conti	nued)				
Rasterize	x	х	х		x
Resample	х				
Colormode	x	x	х		x
Filters	x				
Marquee	x	x	х		x
Lasso	x				
Magic Wand	x	x			x
Моvе	x	x	х		x
Eraser	x	x	х		x
Paintbrush	x				
Pencil	x	x	BW		x
Fill	x	х	BW		х
Crop	x				
Stamp	x				
Autotrace	x	x	х		x
ColorTrace	x	x			x
Centerline Trace	x	х	х		x
PictureCut	х	х	х		x
Working with Effects					
Fuse	x	х	х		x
Separate Overlap	х	х			x
Stripe	х	х	х		x
Blend	x	x			x
Lens	x				
Underbase	x				
Finisher	x				
Color Trapping	x	x	х		x
Graphic Styles	х	x	х		x
Contour	x	х	х	x	
Working with Measurements	and Labels				
Dimensions / Labels	x	х	х		x
Automatic Dimension	x	x	х		x
Dimension to Page	x	x	х		x
Configuring the System for C	olor Printing				
Color Settings	x				
Soft Proof	х				
RIP and Print	x				
Cutting your Design	·	·			
Cut/Plot	x	х	х	x	
Using Production Manager	·	·			
Output Size Compensation	x				

This chart lists only the major features that differentiate the versions of the software. Not every feature present in the software is listed.

Appendix E - Tracing Features

Using Bezier Tracing

Bezier Tracing traces the outline of the image and converts it to Bezier curves. Bezier curves are very convenient for graphic editing, and typically contain fewer points than lines/arcs.

To trace a bitmap using Bezier tracing:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Vectorize** and then select **Bezier**.

Using Enhanced Curves Tracing

This option traces the outline of the image and converts them to Lines and Arcs. This option is the preferred method when scanning small business cards or poor quality artwork.

To trace a bitmap using Enhanced Curves tracing:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Vectorize** and then select **Enhanced Curves**.

Using Enhanced Corners Tracing

This vectorization option is great for larger, camera-ready artwork. It will produce fewer points and sharper corners than the Enhanced Curves option.

To trace a bitmap using Enhanced Corners tracing:

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Vectorize** and then select **Enhanced Corners**.
- 3. Adjust the tracing parameters. You can adjust by dragging the sliders or entering a numeric value.

Tolerance	Controls how close the traced paths stays to the original scanned image. Smaller values will provide an accurate result that is very close to the scanned image, but larger values will create smoother lines and fewer control points.
Noise Suppression	Used to filter out some of the small garbage that is created during the scanning process. If the image contains a lot of "garbage," try using the Reduce Noise bitmap filter prior to vectorizing.
Corner Detection	Sets the threshold for detecting what is and what isn't a corner, and how sharply the corners will be defined.

Reset

Resets the tracing parameters to their default value.

4. Click OK.

Using Centerline Vectorization

This vectorization method is used for black and white or grayscale images, which contain mostly lines rather than filled shapes. It detects the center of the lines and creates a single line vector graphic. Centerline vectorization is typically used in routing and engraving where you may want a single line path for the machine.

- 1. Select the bitmap.
- 2. From the **Bitmap** menu, point to **Vectorize** and then select **Centerline**.
- 3. Adjust the tracing parameters.

Pure Centerline	The program will find the center of each line and create a single line contour.		
Outline Thick Areas	The program will centerline contours that are smaller than the Line Width value and outline areas that are larger than this value.		
Shortest segment length	This option is the minimum distance between junctions. The larger the parameter value is, the more perfect the junctions will be. However, if you are working with an image that may have a lot of close lines, you will want to keep the value small.		
Shortest centerline section	This option only applies when using Outline Thick Areas . It controls the centerline leftovers at the ends of the outlines.		
Joining Paths	When creating a centerline you can select how you want the contours created. The results of the centerline will look the same no matter which option is selected.		
	None	This option will create open contours that are made up of small segments.	

l oons

Long Path

This option will create as many closed contours as possible. These contours can be filled later if necessary.

This option will generate the longest possible contours. This is the most popular option because it minimizes the amount of up/down movements that a router or engraver will have to make.

Automatic	This option will let your software determine what should be centerlined and what should be outlined. The Outline Thick Areas option defaults to the Automatic setting,
Manual	When this option is selected, the Line Width value can be entered.
Line Width	This field tells the program to centerline anything smaller than this value and outline anything larger.
Enhancement	When using Outline Thick Areas you can tell the program what vectorization method to use on the outlines. See "Tracing Bitmaps" on page 172 about Bezier, Corners or Curves tracings.
Options	This button is only available when Corners is selected in Enhancement field. See "Using Enhanced Corners Tracing" on page 301 about the tracing properties of Corner Enhancement tracing.
Reset	Resets the tracing parameters to their default value.

4. Click OK.

Using Color Vectorization

Color vectorization is used to convert color raster images into vector graphics. Before vectorization, the image must be posterized in order to reduce the number of colors.

The Color Vectorization process is divided into 3 steps: Posterization, Merging colors and Vectorization.

Posterize

Posterization is the process of reducing the number of colors to a manageable level so the image can be vectorized.

To posterized an image:

- 1. Choose the posterization method you want.
- 2. Choose the number of colors.
- 3. Click Posterize.

The bitmap is posterized the image, and display the resulting colors in the color list in the dialog box.

Your software provides three methods of posterization:

Fast	This method works on each of the three color channels
Posterization	(Red, Green, Blue) separately. It divides the color range within each channel into equal bands, then fits each pixel in the image to the color band closest to it.
	In this method you specify how many colors you want in the posterized results. Your software offers you a choice from a list of numbers: 8, 27, etc. If, for

	example, you want to divide each color channel into two bands, the total number of possible colors in all three channels will be 8 (2x2x2). In the same way, 3 bands per channel will create 27 colors (3x3x3), etc. The Fast method is, indeed, the fastest posterization method. This method is useful for posterizing logos with very distinct colors. It is not recommended for photos because the colors in the posterized image are quite different than those in the original image.
Smart Posterization	In this method the program finds the most dominant colors in the image. Any pixel is converted to one of these dominant colors, the one closest to it in color. In this method you specify how many colors you want in the posterized result. This method is slower, but the results are much better than the Fast method.
	This method is recommended both for scanned logos and for photos. The limitation of this method is that if you have a picture
	with many background colors, such as many shades of blue in the sky, the program may prefer those to objects in the foreground.
Manual Posterization	In this method you not only decide how many colors you want, but you actually pick these colors in the image. When you choose the Manual method, the cursor changes to a pipette tool. Click the colors in the image you want in the final results. Any color you click on is added to the color list in the dialog box. If you picked a color by mistake, you can select this color in the dialog and press the DELETE key to remove it from the list.

Merge Colors

After you posterize the image, you may want to get rid of some colors. For example, an area in the image which looked Orange may become a mixture (or pattern) of yellow and red after posterization. In this case you can merge these two colors in order to get one solid color for the whole area.

To merge colors:

1. From the list of colors in the dialog, select the colors you want to merge together.

Use **SHIFT** and **CTRL** keys to select multiple colors. The color you want to be the result of the Merge must be selected last. The result of the merge will be displayed in the lower right corner of the dialog.

2. Click Merge.

All pixels in the image, which have the selected color will be converted to the desired color.



Vectorize

Once you are satisfied with the colors in the posterized image, click the **Vectorize** button to vectorize the image into multiple color vector objects.

Appendix F – Keyboard Shortcuts

Alignment		Other	
Align Both Centers	CTRL+5	Cancel Edit	ESC
Align Both Centers	CTRL+SHIFT+5	Close	CTRL+F4
to Page		Close	CTRL+W
Align Bottom	CTRL+2	Exit	ALT+F4
Align Bottom to	CTRL+SHIFT+2	Help Topics	F1
Page		New	CTRL+N
Align Horizontal	CTRL+3	Open	CTRL+O
Centers		Quit	Command+Q
Align Horizontal	CTRL+SHIFT+3	Save	CTRL+S
Centers to Page		Save As	CTRL+SHIFT+S
Align Left	CTRL+4	Palettes	
Align Left to Page	CTRL+SHIFT+4	Color Mixer	М
Align Right	CTRL+6	DesignCentral	CTRL+I
Align Right to Page	CTRL+SHIFT+6	DesignEditor	E
Align Text Baselines	CTRL+0	Fill/Stroke Editor	I
Align Top	CTRL+8	Path Editing	
Align Top to Page	CTRL+SHIFT+8	Select Point Tool	N
Align Vertical	CTRL+7	Bezier Path Tool	Р
Centers		Add Point	+
Align Vertical	CTRL+SHIFT+7	Remove Point	-
Centers to Page		Selecting	
Arranging		0 L L T L	•
D 1 0		Select I ool	A
Back One	CTRL+PAGE	Clear	A BACKSPACE
Back One	CTRL+PAGE DOWN	Clear Clear	A BACKSPACE DELETE
Back One Compound	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M	Clear Clear Copy	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O	Clear Clear Copy Copy	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+DACE	Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE	Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+C	Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Bedraw	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+E	Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Bedraw	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G E5	Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G F5 CTRL+D	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Repeat Pesize	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G F5 CTRL+D CTRL+D	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Beverse Path	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G F5 CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIET+D	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+V
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+V F4
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+R	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Cut Cut Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Redo	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+V F4 CTRL+Y
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing To Back	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+R J SHIFT+NEXT	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Redo Redo Multiple	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+V F4 CTRL+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing To Back To Front	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+SHIFT+D SHIFT+NEXT SHIFT+PRIOR	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Redo Redo Multiple Select All	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+V F4 CTRL+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+A
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing To Back To Front UnCompound	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+SHIFT+D SHIFT+NEXT SHIFT+PRIOR CTRL+1	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Paste Redo Redo Multiple Select All Select by Attributes	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+A D
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing To Back To Front UnCompound	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+SHIFT+D SHIFT+NEXT SHIFT+PRIOR CTRL+J CTRL+J	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Paste Redo Redo Multiple Select All Select by Attributes Undo	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+SHIFT+I F4 CTRL+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+A D F1
Back One Compound Convert to Outlines Convert to Outlines Forward One Group Redraw Redraw Redraw Repeat Resize Reverse Path Direction Rotate Spacing To Back To Front UnCompound Ungroup	CTRL+PAGE DOWN CTRL+M CTRL+SHIFT+O V CTRL+PAGE UP CTRL+PAGE CTRL+G CTRL+G CTRL+E F5 CTRL+D CTRL+K CTRL+SHIFT+D CTRL+SHIFT+D SHIFT+NEXT SHIFT+PRIOR CTRL+J CTRL+J	Select Tool Clear Clear Copy Copy Copy Cut Cut Cut Delete Now Deselect Invert Selection Paste Paste Paste Paste Redo Redo Multiple Select All Select by Attributes Undo	A BACKSPACE DELETE CTRL+C F3 CTRL+INSERT F2 CTRL+X SHIFT+BACK SHIFT+DELETE CTRL+SHIFT+A CTRL+SHIFT+I SHIFT+INSERT CTRL+SHIFT+I CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+SHIFT+Y CTRL+A D F1 CTRL+Z

Text		Pan View	SPACE
Text Tool	Т	Show Fills	CTRL+F
Find and Replace	F3	View Filter	F
Justify Center	CTRL+SHIFT+C	Zoom	Z
Justify Full	CTRL+SHIFT+F	Zoom In	CTRL+=
Justify Left	CTRL+SHIFT+L	Zoom Out	CTRL+-
Justify Right	CTRL+SHIFT+R	Miscellaneous	
Spell Check	F7	Cut/Plot	CTRL+L
Shapes		Document Setup	CTRL+B
Circle Tool	С	Print	CTRL+P
Oval Tool	0	Print Setup (Page	CTRL+SHIFT+P
Polygon Tool	G	Setup on Macintosh)	
Rectangle Tool	R	RIP and Print	CTRL+H
Starburst Tool	S	Toolbars	CTRL+T
View		Measure Tool	U
Next Window	CTRL+TAB	Paint Brush Tool	В

Index

aborting output	260
absolute colorimetric rende	ring
intent	211
accurate screens	280
active setup	253
adding point	151
adding setups	251
Adobe Type 1 fonts	134
advance after printing	269
advanced borders	103
editing	108
Alian Points	145
aligning objects	
angled screen dithering	267
angled screen options	279
apply length and angle	147
apply length and angle	40
arc conv	40 64
arc text 111	0 . 113
archive format	250
archive north	250
archiving printed jobs	265
arcs	140
make arc	150
arithmetic operations	40
arrays of objects	- 0 63
arrows	103
editing	100
	203
attributes	295
selecting by	55
auto aorialization	55
automatic application of	05
automatic application of	40
entered values	40
	40
automatic dimensioning	205
automatic job nesting	283
automatic job tiling	285
automatic kerning	125
automatic page nesting	264,
284	
automatic percent calculation	on Ac
	40
automatic ratio calculation .	40
automatic unit conversion	39

autotrace	.172
background color	80
barcodes	.128
Bezier handles	.105
Bezier paths	.138
bitmap rendering intent	.210
bitmap toolbar	.160
bitmaps	.155
Adobe filters	.172
blur	.170
brightness / contrast	.171
color balance	.171
color modes	.155
crop	.165
erase	.163
exporting	.156
fill165	
filtering	.169
importing	.156
lasso	.161
level	.170
magic wand	.161
marquee	.160
move	.162
paintbrusn	.164
	.164
previewing	16
reduce noise	.169
sharpen	.170
stamp	. 10/
	112
using DesignCentral	100
blending effect	. 192
block lext	200
border printing	.209
borders 102	215
braille text	107
brook opert	120
broaking paths	152
brighton offect	103
bruch change	162
hull'e-ovo	180
calculating percentages	40
calculating percentages	<u>4</u> 0 ⊿∆
calculating ratios	+0

calculation in place .	39
California Braille	128
callouts	See labels
cancel selection	56
case	124
Casfonts fonts	
Casmate tracing	301
cast shadow	186
centerline tracing	174
change start point	151
circles	101
oditing	105
circular stripps	
Clear Droforonana	
Clear Preferences	
clearing effects	
cleaver point	
CMYK swatch tables	s
color	
correction	
modes	
color bands	275
color inversion	193
color libraries	82
creating by measu	rement 84
modifying	83
color library	87
color management s	ystems267
color mixer	
color mode	160
color models for bitm	naps 155
Color Profiler	
color specs	85
color swatches	
color tracing	176
color trapping	
colors	
adding	81
adjusting	275
applying	78
changing	
changing order	
color libraries	
modifying	02 83
color modols	
correcting	
croating	
dofault	00
deleting	00
duetens	03, 8/
duolone	
inaing	87

merging from document82	2
merging similar83	3
preventing output219)
reordering	7
searching	1
selecting by 55	5
separations 276	5
showing all in palette 90)
spot 77	7
swatch table 80)
common effect 180	ý
communication 255	Ś
compounding objects 67	,
constraining shapes 100	h
contour cut 190	à
Contour Cut 241	í
control points 57 105	5
convert stroke to outlines 141	í
convert to outlines 140	י ו
converting margues to shape	'
	,
converting objects to shapes	-
	ג
converting shape to margues	,
converting shape to marquee	,
	-
converting units 30	2
converting units)
converting units	2
converting units	2
converting units	2
converting units) 2 1
converting units) 2 1 1
converting units	
converting units	9241 433
converting units	9241 433)
converting units	9241 433)3
converting units 39 copy 62 corner marks 274 corner radius 101 corners 104 make right angle 154 rounding 148 sharpening 148 cost estimation 30 creating bitmaps 158 creating new documents 23	9241 433)33
converting units	9241 433)333
converting units	9211 433)3333
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners154make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290current palette swatch table.90	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290current palette swatch table.90cusp137	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290current palette swatch table90cusp137cut after printing269	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290current palette swatch table90cusp137cut after printing269cut line152	
converting units39copy62corner marks274corner radius101corners101make right angle154rounding148sharpening148cost estimation30creating bitmaps158creating new documents23creating swatch tables88crop marks272, 273crop tool165cropping jobs290current palette swatch table90cusp137cut after printing269cut line152cut out effect180	
converting units	

default color 8	30
default job properties 26	62
define character 13	30
define kerning 12	25
degree of precision 25	50
deleting colors8	33
deleting jobs25	68
deleting objects 7	'5
deselect all 5	6
design area 1	0
DesignCentral 39, 5	57
bitmaps 15	55
DesignEditor 47, 5	55
deskewing objects 6	51
dimensioning lines 20)4
editing 20)6
dimensioning to page 20)5
display profiles 21	0
distort effect 19)0
distributing objects7	2
dithering 26	6
options for angled screens	
	'9
document setup 1	0
documents	
closing2	25
exporting 2	24
new2	23
saving2	24
sending to EnRoute 2	25
setup4	1
dongle See hardware ke	Эy
drop shadow 18	6
dry time	9
duplicating objects6	53
edit bar	96
edit line	16
editing dimension lines 20)6
effects 17	9
blend 19	12
brighten 19	13
clearing 17	9
color trapping 19	11
combine effects	9
common	50
cut out	5U
	0
finisher	00 NG
	10
iuse) [

invert color	193
lens	192
magnify	193
outline	183
separate overlap	181
separating	179
shadow	185
stripes	186
transparency	192
underbase	194
weld	179
weld based on colors	182
wireframe	102
embedded files	26
omboddod ICC profiles	20 270
entreving fonts	121
engraving ions	.134
EnDeute	207
EnRoute	25
entering numerical values.	
eraser tool	163
error diffusion	266
exclude common effect	180
exporting bitmaps	156
exporting to files	24
eyedropper	79
fans	102
editing	107
features list	299
feed calibration	269
file formats	297
files	
closing	25
exporting	24
finding	29
importing	24
linking and embedding	26
opening	23
saving	24
fill 15	
fill tool	165
fill types	91
Fill/Stroke Editor	91
filtering	
by color	18
filters	169
find and replace	123
finding colors	20
finding files	
finisher effect	106
fit to nath	. 130
π. το ματι	

flip horizontal	264
FMXPress diffusion	267
fonts	
Casfonts	134
changing	122
engraving fonts	134
FSfonts	134
installing	133
modifying fonts in use	135
URW	134
foreground color	80
freehand drawing	140
ESfonts	134
FTP settings	256
fuse effect	181
Getting Started	7
gradient fill	/
gradient rendering intent	210
gradient stripes	100
gradiente	100
gradients	06
conting	100
graphic styles	190
griu	11
grouping objects	00
	12
	Z
over a local area network	005
holding printed jobs	205
	242
	070
adding	278
embedded	278
generating	268
setting input profiles	278
setting output profiles	267
importing bitmaps	156
importing files	24
input profiles	209
Insert Symbol	129
installation	1
Macintosh	3
installed files	295
installing fonts	133
intersection See common e	ffect
intersection removal	151
invert selection 56,	162
job estimation	30
job info	29
jobs	
aborting	260

adding	.258
archiving	.265
cropping	.290
default job properties	.262
deleting	.258
fitting to media	.263
holding	.265
job priority	.259
larger than output mediu	m
	.285
nestina	.282
positioning	.263
printing	259
printing a tile map	286
redirecting	259
RIPing	259
rotating	264
saving	258
selecting	258
setting ich properties	261
sotting job properties	262
toot jobs	203
tiling	200
un posting	200
un-nesung	203
JODS IDIGEI	450
join paths	.153
Join together	.126
kerning	.124
keyboard shortcuts	.307
KF diffusion	.266
labels205,	2/1
lasso tool	.161
layers	47
layout preview	.262
lens effect	.192
license agreement	vi
linearization	.268
linked files	26
loading screen option prese	ets
	.281
locking objects	69
log files	.260
LPR settings	.256
LX diffusion	.267
Macintosh installation	3
Macintosh shortcut keys	4
Macintosh uninstall	3
magic wand tool	.161
magnify effect	.193
make arc	.150

make right angle	154
manual kerning	125
margins 41, 1	274
marquee tool	160
clearing	162
converting to shape	162
inverting	162
masking objects	. 68
measuring colors	. 84
measuring distances	203
media feed calibration	269
media size	263
media types	
adding	276
removing	277
menus	9
merging colors from a	
document into the palette	. 82
merging similar colors	. 83
Microsoft ICM	267
mirroring	264
mirroring objects 43, 59	, 60
modifying color libraries	. 83
moving objects	. 58
Navigator View	. 14
nesting jobs	282
nesting objects	. 73
network printers	252
new documents	. 23
no fill	. 91
number of copies	264
numbering objects	. 65
objects	
aligning	.71
compounding	.67
convert to paths	140
converting to underbase	195
copying	. 62
deleting	. 75
deskewing	. 61
distributing	. 72
duplicating	. 63
filtering	40
by color	. 18
grouping	. 66
IUCKING	. 69
missoring	. 00
mirroning	, 59 50
	. 58
nesung	.13

numbering	
optimize by smooth arc149)
options	
setup properties	\$)) , \$ 5 2 \$ \$ + 1 9 1 2 + 9 8 +
swatch table) + 5 5 + 2 8 - 7 - 5

	147
breaking	153
change direction	144
change start point	151
creating	138
cutting	152
direction	16
editing	1/2
ioin nothe	152
	100
make arc	150
make right angle	154
optimize by 3-point arc	150
optimize by curve	149
optimize by smooth arc	149
reduce points	150
remove tiny objects	154
removing points	151
removing self-intersection	าร
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	151
repeating	147
rounding corners	1/12
aclosting	140
selecting	141
separating to open paths	152
snarpening corners	148
spacing points	146
straightening	144
pattern fill	92
patterns	82
pencil tool	164
percent calculation	40
perceptual rendering intent	211
perspective shadow	186
picturecut tracing	175
point reduction	150
point reduction	150
points	151
adding	101
breaking	153
removing	151
polygons	102
editing	106
ports	255
positioning jobs	263
preferences	20
. clearing	4
preventing output of tiles	289
preview output	213
preview pape	262
proview parle	102
	10
price estimation	30
print direction	269

print marks	272
color	271
width	271
print options	269
print preview	213
print to desktop printer	213
print while RIPing	251
printer's marks See print n	narks
printing a tile map	289
printing color separations.	276
Production Manager	249
new setup	251
saving jobs	258
setun	245
setup on a network	246
nure hue settings	211
radiant strings	197
random diffusion	267
rastorizo	158
ratio calculation	001 ۱۸
rectangles	101
oditing	105
rodirocting jobs	250
rodo	10
redo multiplo	פו סכ
redrow	20 17
reduce pointe	150
refreshing the view	150
reliesning the view	402
registration marks	103
interest	nng
Intent	
remote interactive operation	n ora
	251
remote Send Now operation	on ora
remove point	151
remove tiny objects	154
removing self-intersections	5.151
removing tiling	291
rendering intent	278
rendering intents	210
reordering objects	70
repeating paths	147
repeating the last step	20
resample	158
resizing objects	57
resolution	266
RIP and print	229
advanced options	237
color	239
ProDeSIGN

paneling	233
RIP band height	251
RIP logs	260
RIPing	
number of threads	251
print while RIPing	251
RIP band beight	251
PIPing jobs	250
rotato to fit modio	255
rotating inho	204
	204
rotating objects 42	, 59
Rotating Objects 43	, 44
rounding corners	148
rulers and grid	11
same size	58
saturation rendering intent.	211
save to file	218
saving documents	24
saving screen option preset	S
	280
scanning bitmaps	157
Scanvec Amiable color	-
management system	268
scissors	152
screen	267
scroll bars	13
sourch and replace	102
	123
	0/
	50
select by attributes	55
select similar color	55
select tool	53
select within	54
selecting similar objects	54
selecting with DesignEditor.	50
selection modes	53
sending to EnRoute	25
separate overlap effect	181
separating effects	179
separation between jobs	264
serial port settings	257
setting default ich propertier	207
setting deladit job properties	262
setting job properties	261
entine	201
activating	うをつ
doloting	200
	203
desktop printers	252
editing	253
selecting	253

shadow effect185
shapes
creating99
editing101
sharp corner148
shearing objects43, 59
show fill15
show preview17
size of jobs 263
size of media 263
size of nanel 285
sizing objects 41
snan 74
soft proof 17
solid fill
spacing botwoon pages 260
spacing between pages209
spacing objects
special characters
specifying degree of precision
spell checking124
spot color
rendering intent211
spot colors240
converting to process276
stamp tool167
starburst102
editing107
starting point, changing151
status bar13
step and repeat63
stripes effect186
stroke properties97
styles
graphic198
text131
supported file formats297
swatch table78, 80
swatch tables
creating88
reordering83
saving
system requirements1
TCP/IP settings256
templates 33
temporary files 251
test jobs
text 111
barcodes 128
block

ProDeSIGN

127
127
126
114
124
127
112
130
121
123
126
124
205
132
121
129
124
131
127
132
210
131
289
285
287
289
262
289
291
287
274

tile overlap marks	.274
uniform tiling	.286
tiling preview	.262
tonal scales	.274
tool tips	10
toolbars	7
transparency	.192
trapping	.197
trimming jobs	.290
TrueType fonts	.133
underbase effect	.194
undo	19
undo multiple	19
uniform tiling	.286
uninstalling	3
Macintosh	3
unit conversion	39
units of measurement	.250
URW fonts	.134
vector rendering intent	.210
view filter	18
weld effect	.179
windows	
refreshing	17
wireframe effect	.193
wireframe fill	92
wireframe printing	.215
workspaces	20
zoom	14